

The Fairchild
Dictionary
of Fashion

THIRD EDITION

CD-ROM

CHARLOTTE MANKEY CALASIBETTA

PHYLLIS TORTORA

Illustrated by BINA ABLING

FAIRCHILD BOOKS
NEW YORK

HARDCOVER BOOK:

Executive Editor: Olga T. Kontzias
Development Editor: Sylvia L. Weber
Art Director: Adam B. Bohannon
Production Manager: Priscilla Taguer
Production: Chernow Editorial Services, Inc.
Copy Editor: Suzanne Lander
Interior Design: Adam B. Bohannon
Cover Design: Adam B. Bohannon
Cover Illustration: Bina Abling

Copyright © 2003
Fairchild Publications, Inc.

All rights reserved. No part of this book covered by the copyright hereon may be reproduced or used in any form or by any means—graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, taping, or information storage and retrieval systems—without written permission of the publisher.

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: 2002103884

ISBN: 1-56367-235-9

GST R 133004424

Printed in the United States of America

CD-ROM:

Executive Editor: Olga T. Kontzias
Production Director: Ginger Hillman
Editorial Development Director: Jennifer Crane
Associate Art Director: Erin Fitzsimmons

Copyright © 2010 Fairchild Books, a Division of Condé Nast Publications, Inc.

All right reserved. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without prior written permission of the publisher.

ISBN: 978-1-56367-973-5

GST R 133004424

Manufactured in the United States of America.

Mastered @ Rainbow Multimedia, Inc. - www.rainbowmultimedia.com

CONTENTS

CD-ROM Instructions **iv**

Preface to the Third Edition **iv**

A 3

academic costume 3
activewear 5
aprons 14
armor 16

B 21

belts 29
blouses and tops 34
braids 43

C 50

capes, cloaks, and shawls 52
clerical dress 71
closures 75
clothing construction details 79
coats and jackets 85
cuffs 119

D 122

E 134

embroideries and sewing stitches 136
eyewear 149

F 152

fans 154
feathers 156
footwear 163
furs 188

G 198

gems, gem cuts, and settings 200
gloves and glove construction 210

H 218

hair accessories 218
hairstyles 219
handbags 228
headwear 236
hosiery 269

I 276

J 281

jewelry 283
jumpers 295

K 297

L 301

laces 301
leathers 309
lengths 314

M 320

masks 323

N 334

necklines and collars 335

O 349

P 353

pants 354
plaids and tartans 368
pockets 371
prints, stripes, and checks 377

Q 384

R 385

S 393

scarves 396
shirts 403
shorts 410
shoulders and sleeves 412
skirts 420
sleepwear and loungewear 426
sweaters 439
swimwear 442

T 446

ties 450

U 461

umbrellas and parasols 461
undergarments 462

V 476

vests 477

W 481

waistlines 481
watches 483
wigs and hairpieces 487

X, Y, Z 493

Appendix: Designers **497**

References **521**

CD-ROM INSTRUCTIONS

To search for a specific word or phrase, first click on any alphabet letter located in the left-hand menu under Table of Contents. Then click on the word 'Search' that appears above the Table of Contents. The 'Search PDF' window will appear.

Type the word or phrase in the box underneath 'What word or phrase would you like to search for?'. If appropriate, select one of the search options: 'Whole words only', 'Case-Sensitive', 'Include Bookmarks', 'Include Comments'. Click on the 'Search' button.

The searched word or phrase will be listed with the total number of instances it appears in the document. Each instance will be listed in the 'Results' box. Scroll through the search results and click on the result you want to read. The page where the selected result is found will appear with the

searched for word or phrase highlighted.

To search for another word or phrase, click on 'New Search'.

To go the first page of a particular letter of the alphabet, click on the desired letter in the left-hand menu under Table of Contents or on the Contents page itself and you will go directly to that page.

To scroll through the pages from A to Z, click on the left or right arrows next to the page number box or use the scroll bar on the right side of the window. The pages will scroll up and down in the middle window.

To go to a specific page number, click in the page number box, type in the desired page number, and hit 'Enter'. The page will appear.

PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION

Origins of the Fairchild Dictionary of Fashion

This third edition of *The Fairchild Dictionary of Fashion* stands on the foundation of two previous editions that were originated and developed by Charlotte Mankey Calasibetta. Since 1975, the work has served as an invaluable reference for students, scholars, authors, designers, those in the fashion business, and anyone with an interest in fashion past and present. Professor Calasibetta's description of how she created the first edition will provide insight into the formidable task that she undertook:

This dictionary evolved from a college course in fashion. In an attempt to teach students a vocabulary of fashion terms that would not become outdated, lists were assembled of collars, necklines, sleeves, skirts, and so on, and each was considered in the light of the existing fashion trends—which were "in," and which were "out." The basic categories for this dictionary grew from these lists. The addition

of historical terms and some of the vocabulary of clothing manufacturers rounded out the entries.

The second edition added approximately 1,700 entries and 11 more categories. In 1998 a revised second edition was published that included an appendix containing not only fashion terms new since the previous edition, but also terms used in the manufacture, merchandising, and distribution of apparel; entries describing types of retail organizations; and business terms relating to the fashion industry.

The Third Edition Categories

The third edition preserves what is best of the earlier editions, but a number of changes make the book even more comprehensive and useful. One of the strengths of the dictionary has been the organization of entries into categories. A reader who is interested in a definition of a "peg-top skirt," for

v Preface to the Third Edition

example, will find that entry in the Skirts category and can compare that definition with those for other types of skirts. Illustrations of a variety of skirt types also appear with the category, allowing for visual comparisons.

Should readers not know the category into which an item fits, they can consult the alphabetical listing, where a cross-reference will direct them to the appropriate location.

In past editions, however, some categories tended to overlap other categories and/or entries in the alphabetical listing. After careful analysis of the categories, the author and editors of this edition have merged some, discarded others, and added a few new categories. For example, prior editions had separate categories for SHOES, BOOTS, SANDALS, and SLIPPERS. In this edition, the more general category of FOOTWEAR now contains all of the aforementioned types of foot coverings. The categories of COATS and of JACKETS had a considerable amount of duplication, and so the two categories have been merged into one called COATS AND JACKETS. The table of contents provides a complete list of the categories utilized in this edition.

Another change is in the transfer of historical terms from the alphabetical listing to the appropriate category. If a historical term, for example, “hennin” (a type of hat), clearly fits into a category, it is placed there. Readers will now find “hennin” in the category of HEADWEAR.

Exceptions to this practice include garments that may be similar to modern garments in their function, but different in construction, that were worn before the categorical heading term was used. For example, the category heading PANTS is a relatively recent term that came into use only in the 19th c. Trunk hose, a 16th c. garment for men, differed in form and shape from 19th and 20th c. pants, although they both served as lower body coverings. Such terms are listed separately in the alphabetical listing. Likewise, the category BLOUSES AND TOPS does not include those items designated as “bodices” or other upper-body coverings that were worn before the term “blouse” became widely used in the second half of the 19th c.

DRESSES, LOOKS, and SUITS are examples of categories that contained a number of duplications of

alphabetical entries. As a means of eliminating this repetition, the entries contained in these aforementioned categories have been placed in the alphabetical listing.

Kinds of Words Defined in the Dictionary

Contemporary Fashion Terms

As in the earlier editions, a major focus is fashion terms currently in use and those that tend to be revived periodically. Fashion designers often derive inspiration from the past, and words from earlier decades and even previous centuries may still be in use. For many of the entries, the derivation of the term is noted.

Fashion Terms from Non-Western Cultures and Folk Costume

The focus of this dictionary is fashion in the Western world. To be comprehensive and cover non-Western apparel would require a book far larger than this one. For these reasons, non-Western apparel terms are defined only if they have become part of Western fashion or have some current importance. Folk costume terms are included only if they are used in mainstream fashion.

Historic Fashion Terms

Another important aspect of earlier editions has been the inclusion of historic fashion terms. Historic terms that are no longer in current usage are designated by a special archival symbol, an infinity symbol (∞), as in the following example:

Andalusian *casaque* ∞ (an-da-lo6-zee-an cask)

Woman's evening tunic, fastened down center with series of ribbons, with the front of the skirt cut away, and sloping to knee-length in the back. Worn over another skirt c. 1809.

Several unique aspects of historic terms should be noted. One of these is spelling. Before the publication of standardized dictionaries in English in the 18th and 19th c., spelling could be quite erratic. For example, a popular hair and wig style of the 18th c. can be spelled *cadogan*, *catogan*, or *catagan*.

Medieval terms, some of which derive from English and others from French, tend to have many spelling variations. Those with Latin roots tend to be more stable.

Dictionary users will find many fashion elements from the 19th century that are named after royalty or famous persons of the past. As fashion changes accelerated and periodicals provided more coverage of fashions, there was a tendency to assign names to styles. Also, costume historians and other writers of the 19th c. originated many names for styles of earlier centuries. Where possible, definitions of such terms will incorporate a brief explanation of who the historical personage was or note that a particular term was coined at a time long after the costume was worn.

Merchandising and Retailing Terms

Fashion design, production, and marketing terms were introduced in the revised 2nd edition in an appendix. These and additional entries have been incorporated into the alphabetical listing. The terms included are those with specific application to some segment of the fashion industry. General business terms are not included.

Textile Terms

The number of textile terms has decreased significantly in this edition. Entries have been limited to some basic textile terms, to standard textiles that continue to be widely used, and to new textile materials that have had a recent impact on fashion. Those textile terms that have been retained are identified by a dagger (†).

angora † Soft fuzzy yarn made from the under-hair of the angora rabbit that is used for knitwear and for trimmings.

Since the publication of the 2nd edition of *Fairchild's Dictionary of Fashion*, a new edition of the *Fairchild Dictionary of Textiles* has been issued. That work provides comprehensive listings of textile terms, both contemporary and historic, and users who require a more complete definition of textile terms are advised to consult that work.

Fashion Designers

Previous editions of the *Dictionary of Fashion* have included an appendix of fashion designers and discussion of their work. In the present edition, that appendix has been reduced, so as to provide more space for new fashion entries, and now provides only a brief biographical note about each designer. A very thorough examination of the life and work of important fashion designers past and present is to be found in the Fairchild publication, *Who's Who in Fashion*, 3rd edition. Names of fashion designers listed in the appendix are included in the alphabetical listing and are designated by an asterisk (*).

Dior, Christian * See APPENDIX/DESIGNERS.

Limitations on Entries Included in the Dictionary

In any book, space imposes some limits on content. The following are some of the kinds of terms not included in this work. Definitions of colors have been eliminated because the author and editors felt that it is virtually impossible to define a color; it must be shown.

As previously noted, non-Western apparel terms and folk costume terms are included only if they have become part of Western fashion. Foreign terms do not appear unless they are used in English in fashion or scholarship about fashion. Foreign words used in English in a fashion context *are* included.

Weapons (e.g., swords, daggers, guns) are not included, even when carried ceremonially. Registered trademark names have been eliminated, insofar as that is possible. The constant addition and deregistration of trademarks makes it very difficult to include such entries and be both up-to-date and accurate. Some trademarks, however, are so significant to fashion that they must be included.

Illustrations

The Fairchild Dictionary of Fashion includes 800 drawings, all new, illustrating fashion terms. When an entry is illustrated at some other place in the book, a notation is made of where that illustration can be found.

vii Preface to the Third Edition

Format and Organization of Definitions

The following entries will serve to illustrate the organization and format features of the third edition of *The Fairchild Dictionary of Fashion*.

abilements/abillements See BILLIMENTS.

Entries are printed in boldface. Where more than one spelling is current, alternate spellings are placed behind a slash in the main entry. Cross-references are in small caps. This cross-reference is to an entry in the alphabetical listing.

baseball cap See HEADWEAR.

When an entry in the alphabetical listing is to be found in a category under the same name as the entry, the category alone is cross-referenced and the term can be found in that category. If the term is a synonym or is defined within another entry, it is listed as follows:

cadogan net See HEADWEAR: SNOOD.

ACADEMIC COSTUME

Outfits consisting of caps, called mortarboards (see ACADEMIC COSTUME: MORTARBOARD); gowns; . . . Also called *academic regalia*.

Category headings are printed in capital letters. They are set off from the alphabetical text by borders. Cross-references to items in categories are printed in small caps, with the category given first, followed by a colon, and the individual entry listed after the colon. Synonyms are printed in italics. Any cross-reference that does not include a category designation will be found in the alphabetical listing.

bikini **1.** Two-piece swimsuit introduced in 1946 by designer Jacques Heim, who called it the atom because of its small size. Soon after, a version was advertised as “smaller than the atom.” Eventually the name was changed to bikini after Bikini Atoll, a small coral island in the Pacific where atomic tests were made from 1946 to 1956. Bikinis were worn on Riviera beaches, but

not accepted on U.S. public beaches until the early 1960s. By the 1980s these suits became still smaller and a number of variations had developed. These were: **string bikini**, consisting of a minimal halter bra with bikini panties, worn low on hips, and made of two triangular-shaped pieces attached to an elastic band or string ties; **teardrop bikini**, made up of bikini pants worn with a bra composed of two tiny triangles with straps at neck and around the body; **tankini** (tan2-kee-nee), a woman’s bathing suit with a tank top and a bikini bottom; **corset bikini**, a top that looks like an underwire bra and a bikini bottom; **camikini**, with a camisole top and a bikini bottom. **2.** Man’s very brief swim trunks.

In some entries, closely related terms are defined within the definition of the primary entry. Such terms also serve as primary entries and are printed in boldface type. When an entry has more than one definition, each definition for the entry is preceded by a number in boldface.

babushka (bah-boosh2-ka) Triangular-shaped scarf or square folded diagonally, worn draped over the head and tied under the chin in the manner of Russian peasant woman. *Der.* Russian, “grandmother.” So-called because it was worn by older Russian immigrants to the United States. Also called a *kerchief*.

When derivations for entries are given, they are placed at the end of the entry and preceded by *Der.*

bandeau (ban-doe2)

Pronunciation of the entry, rendered phonetically, follows the main entry. It is printed in nonbold typeface and is placed inside parentheses. Pronunciations are not provided for all terms, but are given when pronunciations may not be obvious to the user. These phonetic renderings are, at best, approximations of the actual pronunciation. Many are foreign language words that are nearly impossible to interpret phonetically. So all terms are rendered in the closest phonetic equivalent in the way that an English-speaker would pronounce the syllables. The

accent mark shown in any pronunciation is given after the syllable that should be emphasized.

Acknowledgments

Many individuals assisted in the preparation of this new edition of *The Fairchild Dictionary of Fashion*. I would like to thank them for the expertise they brought to the project.

My gratitude goes first to my husband, Vincent Tortora, for lending his linguistic skills to his development of the pronunciations included in the work.

A number of individuals contributed both general reviews of the dictionary and specialized reviews of individual categories. The general reviewers are Lynda Campbell, Fairfax County Public Schools; Mary Morris, G Street Fabrics; and Robert Woods, Berkeley College. Reviewers of individual categories include Kate Achelpohl, Vision Council of America, Eyewear; Jerry Anderson, The Neckwear Association of America, Ties; Edith Anderson Feisner, The Embroiderers' Guild of America, Embroidery; Adam Graham, American Gem Society, Gems, Gem Cuts, and Settings and Jewelry; Keith Kaplan, Fur Information Council of America, Furs; Sally Kay, The Hosiery Association, Hosiery; Jeryl Spear, *Salon News* Contributing Editor, Hairstyles and Hair Accessories; and Bella Veksler, Drexel University, Belts, Handbags, Headwear, and Scarves.

Working with Bina Abling, the illustrator of this edition, was a pleasure. The results of her excellent and illuminating contributions are to be found in the pages of this book. And, as always, Merle Thomason, archivist for Fairchild Publications,

was ready and able to locate a basis for elusive illustrations.

I offer my special thanks to the staff of Fairchild Books. Olga Kontzias, Executive Editor, worked through the steps necessary to get the new edition started and provided input to and evaluation of reorganization ideas. Mary McGarry, Acquisitions Editor, became a guide in questions of style, and was a most valuable source of advice and encouragement throughout the writing and editing. Adam Bohannon, Art Director, originated an effective and appealing design for the interior of the book and Priscilla Taguer was the Production Manager.

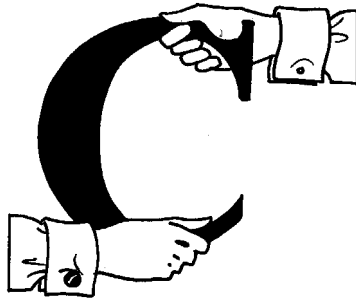
In the production phase, Chernow Editorial Services, Inc., coordinated a smooth transition from manuscript to printed text. Barbara Chernow, President, was always ready with answers to questions about organization and Steve Bedney, Managing Editor, handled the flow of work with what seemed like effortless attention to the many essential details.

Working with these professionals was always rewarding. And I appreciate all of their help.

Numerous libraries also provided assistance. These were the Briarcliff Manor, NY, Public Library and the Westchester, NY, Library System and its numerous branches, the library of the Fashion Institute of Technology, the Queens College Benjamin Rosenthal Library, the New York Public Library and Picture Collection, and the Port Washington, NY, Public Library.

Internet sources of information and confirmation are too numerous to cite, but without use of the World Wide Web, this project would have required far more time and energy.

THE FAIRCHILD DICTIONARY OF FASHION



C

C **1.** Shoe size: Letter indicating a width; widths run from AAAA to EEEEE with AAAAs being the narrowest and EEEEEs the widest. **2.** Pajama size: Men's regular height (5'8"–5'11") size corresponding to 41"–44" chest measurement. For other sizes, see **BIG**, **REGULAR**, **EXTRA-TALL**, and **TALL**. **3.** Shirt size: For men's extra-tall size with 17–17½ collar measurement. **4.** Bra cup size. Standard sizes run AAA, AA, A, B, C, D, the A sizes being the smallest and D the largest. There is no industry agreement on cup sizes larger than D. Different manufacturers use different designations.

caban **1.** See **COATS AND JACKETS**. **2.** See **COATS AND JACKETS: GABERDINE**.

cabana set See **ACTIVEWEAR**.

cabas See **HEADWEAR**.

cabbage ruff See **RUFF**.

cabin-boy breeches See **PANTS**.

cable hatband Band of gold yarn twisted to resemble a rope or cable; worn in the late 16th c.

ca ble stitch See **EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES**.

cable sweater See **SWEATERS**.

cable yarn See **CORD YARN**.

cabochon See **GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS**.

cabretta See **LEATHERS**.

cabriole headdress See **HAIR ACCESSORIES**.

cabriolet bonnet See **HEADWEAR**.

cache-folies See **WIGS AND HAIRPIECES**.

cache-laid See **MASKS**.

cache-peigne See **HEADWEAR**.

cack See **FOOTWEAR**.

CAD See **COMPUTER-AIDED DESIGN**.

CAD/CAM See **COMPUTER-AIDED DESIGN/COMPUTER-AIDED MANUFACTURING**.

caddie/caddy See **HEADWEAR: BUSH HAT**.

cadennette (cad-net') French term for a "lock of hair." See **HAIRSTYLES: COIFFURE EN CADENNETTES**.

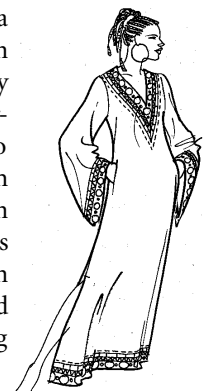
Cadogan See **HAIRSTYLES: GEORGE AND WIGS AND HAIRPIECES: CLUBWIG**.

cadogan net See **HEADWEAR: SNOOD**.

Cadoro® bra See **UNDERGARMENTS**.

Caesar haircut See **HAIRSTYLES**.

caftan Long, full robe with a slit neckline that is often decorated with embroidery and has long or three-quarter-length sleeves that widen to the end. Based on a North African or Middle Eastern garment, the caftan was adopted by American women in the 1960s and after and worn as at-home or evening dress.



caftan

caftan neckline See **NECKLINES AND COLLARS**.

ca ge **1.** Overblouse or dress made out of lattice-like or transparent fabric. **2.** See **UNDERGARMENTS: HOOPS**.

ca ge-americaine See **UNDERGARMENTS**.

ca ge dress Woman's garment made in two layers with inner layer opaque and cut close to body, and outer layer of sheer or latticed fabric hanging loosely. Such dresses, introduced in late

1960s by Paris couturier Yves Saint Laurent, were similar to dresses designed by Spanish couturier Cristobal Balenciaga in Paris in the 1940s. Popular again in the 1990s.

cage empire See UNDERGARMENTS.

cage petticoat See UNDERGARMENTS.

caging See FURS.

calagoule See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS.

cainsil (kane-sil) See CHAINSE.

cairngorm See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

cake hat See HEADWEAR.

calamanco See FOOTWEAR: CALAMANCO SHOES.

calamanco shoes See FOOTWEAR.

calash See HEADWEAR.

calasiris See KALASIRIS.

calcarapedes See FOOTWEAR.

calceus See FOOTWEAR.

calculator watch See WATCHES.

calèche See HEADWEAR: CALASH.

calençons (kal'sen) Worn by women in early 17th c., a type of long drawers or hose worn with doublet and petticoat that later developed into the breeches and trousers of women's contemporary riding habit.

calender † Passing fabric between two heated rollers in order to produce a smooth, even appearance.

calendar watch See WATCHES.

calf-length See LENGTHS.

calfskin See FURS AND LEATHERS.

calgoule See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS.

calico † Plain weave, light- to medium-weight cotton or cotton-blend fabric usually printed with very small designs such flowers or geometric forms. Also see PRINTS, STRIPES, AND CHECKS: CALICO PRINT.

calico button See CLOSURES.

California embroidery See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES.

calisthenic costume Knee-length dress worn with Turkish trousers similar to BLOOMER COSTUME. Worn in late 1850s by women and girls for such sports as archery, iceskating, and exercising with dumbbells. Later, a version of this dress was called *gymnasium costume*.

calk See FOOTWEAR.

calligraphic scarf See SCARVES.

Callot Soeurs * See APPENDIX/DESIGNERS.

calotte 1. See HEADWEAR. 2. See CLERICAL DRESS.

calypso chemise (ca-lip-so) Woman's dress of the 1790s made in two parts: a dress of colored muslin worn under a loose robe.

calypso shirt See SHIRTS.

CAM See COMPUTER-AIDED MANUFACTURING.

camail 1. See ARMOR. 2. See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS.

Camargo See COATS AND JACKETS.

Camargo hat See HEADWEAR.

camauro See CLERICAL DRESS.

cambric † Fine, closely woven cotton fabric made with mercerized yarns given a calendered finish. May also be made of linen and used for handkerchiefs. *Der.* From Cambrai, France.

Cambridge coat See COATS AND JACKETS.

Cambridge paletot See COATS AND JACKETS.

camelaurion See HEADWEAR.

cameleons See FOOTWEAR.

camel hair † 1. Fibers from the crossbred Bactrian camel of Asia, which produces soft luxurious yarn that is resistant to heat and cold. 2. Cloth made of these fibers.

cameo 1. A small low relief carving usually made from a banded two-layered gemstone such as onyx or sardonyx that gives a raised design, usually in white with another color left as the background. Most common subject is a woman's head and shoulders. The opposite of INTAGLIO. See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS: CAMEO and INTAGLIO. 2. Carving a two-tone shell in the same manner as above to produce a **shell cameo**. 3. Using colored pottery material similar to that used by Josiah Wedgwood and molded to produce a WEDGEWOOD® CAMEO (see under JEWELRY).

Cameron tartan See PLAIDS AND TARTANS.

comes See UNDERGARMENTS: CHEMISE.

camikini See SWIMWEAR: BIKINI.

camise See UNDERGARMENTS: CHEMISE.

camisette See UNDERGARMENTS.

camisia Medieval British term for chemise. See UNDERGARMENTS: CHEMISE.

camisole 1. See UNDERGARMENTS. 2. See BLOUSES AND TOPS: CAMISOLE TOP. 3. See NECKLINES AND COLLARS: CAMISOLE NECKLINE. 4. Sleeved jacket or jersey formerly worn by men.

cami-tap set See UNDERGARMENTS: TAP PANTIES.

52 camouflage pants

camouflage pants See PANTS.

camouflage suit See ACTIVEWEAR.

camp 1. Deliberate adoption of styles or behavior that are generally considered to be vulgar, artificial, or humorous. *adj.* Also used as an adjective to describe such styles. 2. See SHIRTS and SHORTS.

campagus See FOOTWEAR.

campaign coat See COATS AND JACKETS.

campaign hat See HEADWEAR.

campaign wig See WIGS AND HAIRPIECES.

camp shirt See SHIRTS.

camp shorts See SHORTS.

canadienne See COATS AND JACKETS.

canary breeches See ACTIVEWEAR: RIDING BREECHES.

canary diamond See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

cancan dress Contemporary version of the traditional costume of Parisian cancan dancers of the 1890s. The bodice has a bustier effect and laces up the back. The skirt has an overskirt in apronlike effect tapering to center back with a large bow, and is worn over underskirt made with rows of ruffles.



cancan dress

Designed by Victorine for Karl Lagerfeld of Chanel for fall 1986. *Der.* Similar to dresses worn by Music Hall dancers in film and stage show *Can-Can* and those shown in paintings by Henri Toulouse-Lautrec.

candlewick embroidery See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES.

candy stripes See PRINTS, STRIPES, AND CHECKS.

cane Staff or walking stick to assist walking or to carry as a fashionable accessory. Canes vary from rough rustic wood for country use, e.g., *shillelagh* (sha-lay'-lee), to polished woods with elaborately decorated heads. Carried from 16th c. to present by men and occasionally by women, specific types included: *malacca cane* (mah-lah'-kah), also called a *clouded cane*, carried in 18th c. and made from the mottled stem of the malacca

palm; *rattan canes*, carried in 17th and 18th c. and made from an East Indian palm; *constable*, a small cane with a gold-plated top carried by men in 1830s and 1840s; *penang lawyer*, a walking stick used by men in 19th c. made from a palm stem with a bulbous top.

canezou (can-zoo') Refers to any of several types of 19th-c. accessory garments that were sometimes worn as a means of extending the life of an older garment. 1. A woman's waist-length spencer jacket of 1820s without sleeves, this sleeveless overblouse style continued in use until the 1860s. 2. In 1830s a cape, cut short and pointed, extending down center front and back but not covering the arms. Also called *canezou pelerine*. 3. By mid-19th c. an elaborate fichu or scarf of muslin, ribbons, and lace covering bodice of dress.

canezou pelerine See CANEZOU #2.

canions Tubular garments worn on the thighs as extensions of men's TRUNK HOSE from 1570 to 1620. Frequently of different fabric or color than the trunk hose. Shown at ELIZABETHAN STYLES.

cannetille (can-tee) 1. Military braid of gold or silver thread that looks like lace. Also spelled *cantile*. 2. Fine spiral-twisted gold or silver thread, used for embroidery.

cannon 1. See CANNONS. 2. See ARMOR.

cannons Frills of lace or bunches of ribbons that fell down over tops of wide boots worn by men during 1660s and 1670s. Also called *port canons*, *canons*. Also worn with low shoes and PETTICOAT BREECHES. Shown at PETTICOAT BREECHES.

cannon sleeve See SLEEVES AND SHOULDERS.

canotier See HEADWEAR.

canteen bag See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES.

cantile See CANNETILLE #1.

canvas embroidery See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES: BERLIN WORK.

cap See HEADWEAR.

capa See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS.

CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS

cape Sleeveless outerwear of various lengths usually opening in center front; cut in a full

circle, in a segment of a circle, or on the straight—usually with slits for arms. A classic type of outerwear worn in one form or another throughout history. During the Middle Ages, a cape was more generally called a *mantle*. Important from then on in various eras in various lengths as a separate item or attached to coats. Shown at CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: BURNOOSE.

cloak Loose outer garment not clearly distinguishable from outer garments that might also be classed as *caples*, *mantles*, or *loose coats* with vestigial sleeves. This term appears often during last half of 19th c.

shawl Decorative or utilitarian wrap, larger than a scarf, worn draped over the shoulders and sometimes the head. May be oblong, square, or a square folded diagonally. Believed to have originated in Bukhara, it was worn in Kashmir as early as late 16th c. Also worn in Persia and India, and worn by country people for utilitarian purposes. Did not become fashionable in Europe until second half of 18th c. Very popular throughout the 19th c. and worn intermittently since. *Der.* Persian and Hindu, “shal.” Shown at CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: SPANISH SHAWL.

all-purpose poncho See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: RAIN PONCHO.

almuce Small fur-lined Medieval cape with attached hood that tied under the chin. Also spelled *amuce*, *almusse*, *auniæ*, *aumusse*.

Andalouse cape (an'-da-looz') Cape worn outdoors by women in 1846, made of silk and trimmed with fringe.

artois (ahr-twah') Long loose cloak with lapels and several capes, the longest ending near the waistline; worn by men and women in late 18th c.

Balmoral mantle Cloak of velvet, cashmere, or wool styled like an INVERNESS CAPE (see under CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS) and popular for outdoor wear in the 1860s.

barège shawl (ba-rezh') A printed shawl made in France in the 1850s from fabric with worsted crosswise yarns and silk lengthwise yarns.

bautte/bautta (bah-oot'ta) Black cloth wrap of 18th c. with hood that could be drawn down over face to form a half mask.

beach poncho Oblong terrycloth poncho that can be laid flat for use as a towel at the beach.

bell Circular cape used as traveling cloak, sometimes hooded, sometimes with side and back vents; worn by men and women from late 13th to early 15th c.

beluque Woman's cape or mantle worn in the 15th c.

Bernhardt mantle Woman's short outdoor cape with loose front and dolman or sling sleeves that was popular in 1886. Named after Sarah Bernhardt, a famous French actress of the period.

birrus Hooded cape of rough cloth, worn in bad weather by Romans of all classes under the last emperors. Also spelled *byrrus*, *buros*.

bivouac mantle (biv-oo-wak') Full-length loose cape of scarlet cloth, styled with high collar, padded and lined with ermine. Worn by women in 1814.

Bokhara shawl (bo-kar'-a) Shawls made in Bokhara, Uzbekistan, of camel's hair spun into yarn. Dyed with vegetable dyes and woven into 8-inch strips of patterned fabric joined invisibly to form shawls.

bolero cape Elbow-length cape, worn by women at end of 19th c., cut like a bolero in front and tapered to waistline in back. Also called *bolero mantle*.

box cape Straight cut, elbow- or hip-length cape with broad padded shoulders and square silhouette. Made of fur or wool and fashionable in late 1930s.

bratt 1. Mantle or cape made of coarse material worn by peasants in Ireland in 9th and 10th c. Also called *Irish mantle*. 2. Term used in latter part of 14th c. for wrap or blanket for an infant.

broché (bro-shay') Paisley-type shawl made in Scotland, woven in alternating stripes of pattern and plain color. See CASHMERE SHAWL #2. Very popular in 1830s.

bubble cape Elbow-length fur cape often made with skins worked in the round. Popular in 1950s and early 1960s.

burnoose/burnouse Circular three-quarter length cape of wool that had a pointed hood or fabric cut and sewn to simulate a hood. The hood often had a tassel attached at the point. The garment was derived from capes worn by indigenous people of North Africa. Especially popular in the 1840s to the 1860s, the style is occasionally revived.



burnoose

capogule (ka-gool') Cloth or fur semi-circular cape with attached hood worn by peasants from 11th to 13th c.

capa 1. Wide, circular, full-length hooded cape worn by Spanish men from Middle Ages to early 17th c. In the Romantic era in France (c. 1830s and 1840s), it was called *cape a l'espagnoles* (les-pan-yol') and worn by women. **2.** Full cape worn by bullfighters in Spain, used to attract bull's attention. *Der.* Latin, *capa*, "hooded cloak."

capelet Any small cape, e.g., a cape collar, attached or detachable, on a coat, dress, or suit. Also see CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: TIPPET.

capote (kah-pote') **1.** Full circular cape with wide cape collar and red lining. Used as a working cape by matadors at Spanish and Mexican bullfights. Also spelled *capot*. **2.** Generic term for hooded coat or cloak worn from Middle Ages on.

capuchon (kap'-oo shon) Woman's waist-length outdoor evening mantle with wired hood and long tight sleeves worn in 1837. Also called *carmeillette* (kar-may'-yet).

cardinal 1. In 18th c. three-quarter-length scarlet cloak with hood that resembled the MOZETTA worn by cardinals in Roman Catholic church. See CLERICAL DRESS: MOZETTA. **2.** Woman's waist-length red cloak without hood or collar worn in 1840s.

carmeillette See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: CAPUCHON.

casaweck See COATS AND JACKETS.

cashmere shawl 1. Extremely fine, soft shawl handmade from hair of the Tibetan cashmere

goat. In the Kashmir Valley of northwestern India weaving was under the direction of the Maharaja from c. 1586 and for over 200 years shawls were woven for the court and never left India. Two main types were made: (a) Those with woven designs that were made in sections and sewn together in square and oblong shapes. Often they were woven in pairs so that they were reversible. These were called *twin* or *double shawls*. (b) Others woven in a color scheme of white, red, or green and afterward embroidered in gold, silver, and silk threads. The characteristic design is a cone or leaf pattern called a **boteh**. Such shawls were extremely popular during French consulate (1799–1804) and Empire period (1804–1814).

2. Machine-made sheep's wool imitations of cashmere shawls produced in France and Scotland and popular during the 19th c. Known also as **paisley shawls** (pay'-slee) after the town of Paisley in Scotland, where large numbers of these shawls were manufactured. The characteristic boteh design became known as a *paisley design*.



paisley shawl

cassock mantle Woman's knee-length short-sleeved cloak, with shirring at shoulders and down the center back, of 1880s.

cawdor cape See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: GLENGARRY CAPE.

chambord mantle/chambard mantle Three-quarter-length hooded woman's cloak of 1850s that resembled a shawl with fullness in back, made of satin or velvet.

chausee hood See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: EPITOGA #2.

chlaine (klain) Woolen cape worn in Greece during Homeric period by shepherds and warriors.

chlamys (klay'-mis or klahm'-is) Oblong mantle approximately 5' or 6' x 3', fastened in front or on one shoulder with a pin. Worn in ancient Greece by travelers, youths, soldiers, hunters, and in Greek mythology by the god Hermes. Chlamys continued to be worn in

more semicircular shape in Byzantium and in later centuries for sports and traveling

circular Long cape or mantle of silk, satin, or other fine fabric in extra wide widths, and frequently lined with rabbit or gray squirrel combined with bright fabric. Fashionable in late 19th c.



chlamys

clerical cape See CLERICAL DRESS.

cloak See under category heading for CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: CLOAK.

Colleen Bawn cloak Woman's cloak of 1860s to 1890s made of white grenadine with large cape pulled up in center back and caught with rosettes or bowknots. *Der.* After the title of a melodrama by Dion Boucicault.

cope 1. See CLERICAL DRESS. 2. Style worn as a coronation robe by English sovereigns. 3. Originally a hooded cloak designed as a rain cape sometimes made with sleeves and fastened in center front. After adoption by clergy, it was always sleeveless and richly decorated.

compass cloak See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: FRENCH CLOAK.

cottage cloak Woman's hooded cloak of 19th c. tied under chin, similar to those seen in pictures of the fairy-tale character Little Red Riding Hood.

crispin 1. Cloak without a collar worn by actresses waiting in the theater wings in early 19th c., later adopted for men, women, and children. First worn in mid 1820s. 2. Man's evening cloak, with full sleeves and quilted lining, worn in late 1830s. 3. Woman's short mantle of early 1840s with close-fitting back and small PELERINE cape (see under CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS)—sometimes with sleeves—made of bias-cut satin, velvet, or cashmere and often padded.

crocheted shawl Fringed shawl made by hand crocheting usually in a lacy pattern. Popular in late 1960s and early 1970s in oblong, semicircular, or triangular shapes.

domino 1. Originally, a large hood worn by monks. Later, a cloak with attached hood for

men and women. 2. A large cloak, usually black, worn with a small mask for traditional carnival and masquerade costume. Popular in 18th and 19th c.



domino #2

Dorothy cloak Wool cape manufactured and sold to the public after 1890

by the Shakers, a religious community. Full length, with a short shoulder cape, and without arm slits, it opened down the front and closed with silk ribbon ties. It had a very full, attached hood and was made in a variety of colors. *Der.* Named after the designer Shaker Eldress Dorothy Durgin.

epitoga 1. Originally an ancient Roman cloak worn over the toga sometimes having bell-shaped sleeves. 2. Cloak of the 13th c. similar to above but cut more like a robe and worn as academic dress. Also called *chause* or *chausee hood*. 3. The medieval hood reduced to symbolic form as a part of academic and ceremonial robes.

Esmeralda cloak Waterproof wrap of the late 1860s worn in U.S. Introduced from Paris in both plain and tartan designs. In England, worn only in the rain. In Paris it had two capes, no sleeves, and was ornamented with bows, frills, fringe, satin braid, and rosettes.

Eugénia, The Voluminous woman's cape of early 1860s, of seven-eighths length. Usually black with second cape reaching to waist in back and shorter in front. Both capes were edged with fancy box-pleated ribbon.

faldetta Waist-length colored taffeta women's mantle trimmed with wide lace ruffle worn in 1850.

fichu-pelerine Large cape or shawl-like covering for woman's shoulders worn from mid-1820s to 1860s. Usually white and frequently made with a double cape and turned-down collar and tied in front with the



fichu-pelerine 1834

ends reaching below the waist and sometimes as far as the knee.

fishnet poncho Square medium-sized poncho made of fishnet or see-through fabric with a high large turtleneck collar. The edge of the collar and the hem is trimmed with ball fringe.

French cloak Long circular or semi-circular cape, sometimes with a square flat collar or shoulder cape worn in 16th and 17th c. One type of French cloak was the **compass cloak**, a full circular cape worn by men. When made in semi-circular shape, it was called a **half-compass cloak**. In the 16th c., any of these cloaks was also called a *manteau*.

French policeman's cape Circular-cut knee-length cape worn by French policemen, made of heavy black wool and rubber. Heavy enough to be swung like a club. Authentic cape was sold as sportswear in boutiques and Army surplus stores in U.S. in late 1960s. Also called *gendarme cape*.

frileuse Women's cape or pelerine wrap, with a fitted back and loose sleeves, made of quilted satin or velvet. Used indoors or at the theater in 1847.

froufrou mantle Woman's shoulder cape of late 1890s made in three tiers trimmed with RUCHING. Had a high, standing collar and rosettes and long ribbon streamers in front. Also called *froufrou cape*. *Der.* From the name of the comedy *Froufrou*, written by Henri Meilhac and Ludovic Halévy in 1869.

fur stole Term used in 20th c. for waist-length fur cape with elongated ends in front, sometimes trimmed with tails of animals. Formerly called *pelerine* or *tippet*. Very popular in late 1940s, 1950s, and 1960s, especially in mink.

gendarme cape See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: FRENCH POLICEMAN'S CAPE.

genoa cloak See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: ITALIAN CLOAK.

Glengarry cape Three-quarter-length cape worn by women in the 1890s made with a tailored collar and single-breasted closing. A hood, sometimes plaid lined, was attached at

neckline under the collar. Also called *cawdor cape*.

glocke (glok'-ka) Medieval poncho-type outer garment made of LODEN CLOTH, with a hole in center of large circle of fabric. Still worn today, especially in mountainous Alpine regions of Europe. *Der.* German, "bell."

half-compass cloak See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: FRENCH CLOAK.

Inverness cape (in-ver-ness) Man's full cape, usually long, and made of wool or worsted. Was close-fitting at neck and fell loose from shoulders—often made in plaid patterned fabric.

Irish mantle See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: BRATT.

Isabella (The) Hip-length collarless cape of mid-1850s made with slashes for arms and extra capelets at dropped shoulders to cover arms.

Italian cloak Short hooded cloak worn by men in the 16th and 17th c. Also called *Spanish cloak* or *Genoa cloak*.

Jocelyn mantle Knee-length, double-skirted, sleeveless woman's mantle of 1852 made with three capes trimmed with fringe.

lacrerna Semi-circular knee-length cape fastened in center front or on right shoulder by a fibula (pin). Worn by ancient Romans from 2nd c. B.C. to A.D. 5th c. Made of wool in white, natural, amethyst, and purple decorated with gold.

lapponica Poncho of plaid wool with fringed edges imported from Finland. Colorful plaids are of all varieties, some being in large squares of color; some being more complicated similar to the STEWART TARTANS (see PLAIDS AND TARTANS); and some in smaller checks similar to glen plaid (see PLAIDS AND TARTANS: GLEN URQUHART PLAID).

limousine Full-length circular woman's evening cape of late 1880s with shirring around neck so fullness falls in folds over the arms, forming sleeves.

Maintenon cloak (mant-nown') Woman's wide-sleeved, black velvet coat of 1860s sometimes embroidered and usually trimmed with

a wide pleated flounce covered with GUIPURE LACE (see under LACES). *Der.* Named for the *Marquise de Maintenon*, mistress and second wife of Louis XIV of France.

manteau (man-tow') See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: FRENCH CLOAK.

mantelet 1. A short cape mentioned by Chaucer in 1386. 2. Small doak worn by women in 18th c. 3. Scarf of fur, lace, or silk worn around shoulders, crossed over chest, and ends tied in back from 1814 to 1835. 4. 19th-c. woman's rounded shoulder cape with long end tucked under belt in front. Also spelled *mantelot*, *mantlet*.

mantilla (man-ti'l-ah) 1. Shawl or veil worn by Spanish women, usually of black lace—white lace worn for festive occasions. Worn draped over head, sometimes over a high comb placed in hair, wrapped around neck, and falling over shoulders. This shawl has influenced 20th-c. fashions. 2. Lightweight shawl of silk, velvet, or lace worn by women from 1840s to 1880s. Shawl hung long in back and had long ends in front. Also spelled *mantella*. *Der.* Diminutive of Spanish *manta*, "shawl."

mantle 1. Long, loose, cape-like cloak originally cut square, oblong, or as a part of a circle. Worn from 12th through 16th c. by men and women. Mantles could be either **open mantles**, one length of fabric fastened by a pin or clasp on one shoulder, at the center, or tied at the neck, or **closed mantles** with openings for the head to slip through. 2. In 14th c. usually a ceremonial open mantle 13th c. cape. Sometimes lined and called a double mantle. 3. By 19th c. term for a cape without sleeves. 4. Wrap for infants in 17th and 18th c. *Der.* Latin, *mantellum*, "covering."



mantlet Matilda/mantlet Matilde Type of shawl-like woman's garment trimmed with fringe or taffeta in front, worn in 1850s.

manton de manilla See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: SPANISH SHAWL.

Maud Woman's fringed wrap of plaid fabric worn in mid-1850s.

maxi cape Any ankle-length cape.

midi cape Any calf-length cape.

Moldavian mantle Full-length woman's mantle of mid-1850s with long capes over the shoulders forming "elephant sleeves."

montpensier mantle (mon-pon-see'-ay) Woman's capelike garment of 1840s, long in back, with front ending in a point, and slit up sides, leaving arms free.

Mother Hubbard cloak Woman's or girl's three-quarter-length cloak of 1880s made of brocade, velvet, satin, or cashmere with quilted lining, high collar tied at neckline, full sleeves—often in DOLMAN (see under SHOULDERS AND SLEEVES) style with shirring over shoulders. Sometimes the back section was draped over a *bustle* and tied with ribbon bow.

mousquetaire mantle (moose-key-tare') Braid-trimmed black velvet mantle of mid-19th c. with short deep cuffs lined with quilted satin. Worn by women in 1847. *Der.* From cape worn by French musketeers or royal bodyguards of Louis XVIII in 17th c.

mozetta See CLERICAL DRESS.

muleta cape Descriptive term for a Spanish-type midi cape made of felt, sometimes scarlet, and trimmed with wool tassels around the neck, down front, and around hem. Featured in late 1960s for women.

Normandie cape Lightweight, hip-length woman's cape of late 1890s made with ruffles extended down center front, around the hem, sometimes around yoke, and a standing collar or a double-tiered ruff at the neck.

nurse's cape Three-quarter-length cape of navy-blue wool trimmed with brass buttons and lined in red. At one time worn by nurses when they wore traditional uniforms.

officer's cape Three-quarter-length cape in navy-blue worsted with small standing collar; part of dress uniform of officers in U.S. Navy.

opera cape Man's full, circular calf-length black worsted cape, sometimes lined in red

58 capes, cloaks, and shawls: opera wrap

satin. Worn for formal occasions with **TAIL COAT** (see **COATS AND JACKETS**) and **TOP HAT** (see **HEADWEAR**). *Der.* In the 19th c., it was fashionable attire with the high silk hat for the opera. Also favored by magicians and circus ringmasters.

opera wrap Term used in early 1900s for women's full-length opera cape usually made of elaborate fabric trimmed with fur or feathers.

paenula (pay'-new-la) Hooded cape or poncho-shaped garment, made of heavy woolen fabric or leather. Worn by ancient Romans for traveling or inclement weather.

paisley shawl See **CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: CASHMERE SHAWL #2**.

palatine See **CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: TI PPET**.

palatine royal A fur cape of 1851 with a quilted hood and short ends in front. Also called *victorine*.

paletot-cloak (pal-ah-tow' or pal-to w') Man's hip-length cape of the 1850s made in single- or double-breasted style with armhole slits.

paletot-mantle (pal-ah-tow' or pal-to w') Woman's three-quarter-length cloak with hanging sleeves and a cape collar worn in late 1860s.

palla Rectangular shawl-like garment resembling ancient Greek **HIMATION**. Worn by Roman women draped around body, sometimes with one end draped over head.

pallium Rectangular shawl worn by Roman man. Also see **HIMATION**.

paludamentum (pa-lu-damen'tum) **1.** Purple mantle of rich fabric fastened with clasp at shoulders. Worn by Roman emperors and military officers. **2.** Same item worn by upper class Byzantine men, the emperor, and the empress but



palla and stola



paludamentum #2

changed to ankle-length by 5th c. This garment had a large, square decoration called a **TABLION** at the open edge over the breast.

pelerine (pel-er-reen') **1.** Woman's short shoulder cape of fur, velvet, or other fabric worn from 1740 to end of 18th c. Sometimes worn with long scarf ends crossed and tied around waist. **2.** A wide collarlike cape, sometimes permanently attached, made of lace or fabric worn over a dress or **PELISSE** (see under **COATS AND JACKETS**) that was especially popular from c. 1820 to 1850.

peplum rotonde Woman's waist-length circular cloak, made with back vent and fringed border, worn in 1871.

piano shawl See **CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: SPANISH SHAWL**.

Pierrot cape (pee-ehr-oh') Woman's three-quarter-length cloak of 1892 with additional shoulder cape and satin ruff at neckline similar to that worn with Pierrot costume.

Polish mantle Knee-length woman's cloak of mid-1830s with attached cape made of satin edged with fur.

polonaise (pol-on-nays') In 1750s a cape or small hooded cloak drawn back like a polonaise dress (see **POLONAISE #1**). Also called *polonaisepardessus* (pol-on-nays' par-de'-soo).

poncho **1.** Fashion item shaped like a square or a small oblong blanket with hole in center for the head. Frequently fringed around the edges. Popular in late 1960s and after. **2.** Utilitarian garment consisting of waterproofed fabric with a slash in the center for the head. When worn, it was used as a rain cape; when not worn could be used as a tarpaulin or a blanket. **3.** Square of nylon fabric, 54" x 80", laminated with polyvinyl chloride, that slips over the head and snaps closed at the sides to make a partial sleeve. One size fits everyone. Usually styled with an attached hood. Originally made of a rubberized fabric and worn by policemen on a



poncho #1

rainy day. Also called a *rain poncho* or *all-purpose poncho*. **3.** Woman's loose three-quarter-length cloak worn in the 1860s with buttons from neck to hem, a small standing collar, full sleeves—narrower at the wrist—with capes over the sleeves.

rain cape **1.** A lightweight plastic cape that may be folded, placed in a small envelope, and carried for use when it rains. **2.** A cape of any fabric treated for water repellency.

rain poncho See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: PONCHO #3.

rebozo (re-bow'-zho) An oblong shawl made of native fabric worn originally by South American Indians and introduced as a fashion item in late 1960s.

ripple cape In the 1890s a woman's short ruffled cape extended beyond the shoulder by shirring three layers of fabric or lace onto a yoke trimmed with ribbon.

roquelaure (roké'-ay-lore) Man's knee-length to full-length heavy cloak of 18th c. often fur-trimmed and lined with bright-colored silk. Usually made with cape collar and back vent for riding horse back. *Der.* From Antoine Gastone Jean-Baptiste, le duc de Roquelaure (1656–1738), minister of wardrobe under Louis XIV. Also spelled *roculo*, *roccelo*, *rocklo*.

rotonde Woman's short or three-quarter length circular *cape* of 1850s and 1860s made of lace or of same material as dress.

sagum (sa'-goom) Red woolen rectangle of cloth worn pinned on the right shoulder as a cape by Roman soldiers and by all Roman citizens in time of war. The phrase "to put on the sagum" was synonymous with saying "to go to war."

serape (say-rah'-pay) Bright-colored oblong rectangle worn by Mexicans over the shoulder. Handmade in horizontally striped patterns, it resembles a small blanket. Usually made with fringed ends.

shale French shawls, with handspun warp and machine-spun merino filling, made in Rheims.

shawl See under category heading for CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: SHAWL.

skoncho A do-it-yourself style poncho made from a brushed wool plaid blanket or striped with a fringe on two ends, similar to a blanket used at a football game. A 16" slash is cut diagonally in the center. May also be worn as a skirt.

soccus Ceremonial and coronation cape fastened on the right shoulder worn during Middle Ages by kings and dignitaries. Also spelled *socq*.

sontag (sonn'-tag) Woman's small cape of 1850s and 1860s worn for warmth, often knitted or crocheted with ends crossed in front and worn under a cloak. *Der.* Named for German opera singer, Henriette Sontag.

sortie de bal (sor'-tee de bal) Woman's evening *cloak* with attached hood worn from 1850s to 1870s. Made of silk or cashmere and lined with a quilted fabric.

space blanket Insulated blanket with one side aluminized, the other brightly colored. Worn on one side to insulate from the cold, the other side protects from the heat of the sun. Folds to pocket size for easy carrying. *Der.* Developed for NASA space program in late 1960s.

Spanish cloak See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: ITALIAN CLOAK.

Spanish shawl Large embroidered silk shawl usually made in China then shipped to Spain where the long silk fringe was added. When such a shawl was shipped by way of Manilla in the Philippines, it was known as a *manton de manilla*. When used as a wrap, the shawl was folded diagonally with the point in center at the back and the ends thrown loosely over the shoulders. A fashionable accessory of the early 20th c., it was revived in the late 1960s and early 1970s and becomes fashionable periodically. Also called *piano shawl*, because in the early 20th c. this type of shawl was draped on the top of grand pianos.



Spanish shawl 1926

60 capes, cloaks, and shawls: Spencer cloak

Spencer cloak Woman's cloak of early 19th c. made of embroidered net with elbow-length sleeves.

stole 1. See SCARVES. 2. See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: FUR STOLE.

tabard Short heavy cape of coarse cloth worn outdoors in 19th c. by men and women.

tablet mantilla Watered or plain silk wrap of mid-1850s made with a yoke that falls low on the shoulders. Trimmed with cut-tu rret (tab-shaped) edging narrow braid, and fringe.

Talma 1. Woman's long cape or cloak, frequently hooded, worn in 1860s. 2. Woman's knee-to-hip-length cape of embroidered satin, lace, or velvet with fringe at hem used as an outer garment from 1850s to mid-1870s. 3. In 1890s, a woman's full-length coat with loose sleeves and lace cape or deep velvet collar. 3. Knee-length man's cape with a turned-over collar and silk lining, worn for evening in 1850s. *Der.* Named for François Joseph Talma (1763–1826), a French tragic actor of Consulate and Empire period. Also called *Talma mantle*.

tebenna (te-bain'-ah) Etruscan semicircular cloak in purple, white, or black (for funerals) worn by a king and important citizens—short at first, later knee-length, and finally full-length. The Roman toga is thought to have developed from this cloak.

templar cloak See COATS AND JACKETS: CABAN.

tippet 1. Shoulder cape of fur or cloth worn by women from 16th c. on. In the 1840s, such a small fur or lace shoulder cape of the 1840s with long flat ends in front reaching below the waist was called a **palatine**. 2. See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: FUR STOLE.

tudor cape Woman's short circular cape of 1890s, usually using embroidered fabric. Made with pointed yoke front and back, and epaulet on each shoulder, and velvet Medici collar.

venetian cloak Woman's black satin cloak of late 1820s with collar, cape, and wide hanging sleeves.

victorine See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: PALATINE ROYAL.

visite (vee-zeet) General term for woman's loose cape-like outdoor garment worn in last half of 19th c.

waterproof cloak Outergarment with small tasselled hood worn by women from 1867 to 1870s, made of waterproof fabric. Later became an ankle-length semi-fitted coat with princess lines buttoned down the front. Also see CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: ESMERALDA CLOAK.

Watteau cape (wat-toe') Knee-length cape of the 1890s worn by women. Styled with collar fitted on neck then turned over. Made with single box pleat in back, and gathered to neckline in front. Made with separate pieces gathered over the shoulders to form capes over the arms. *Der.* Named for the artist Antoine Watteau (1684–1721).

witchoura mantle 1. Woman's cloak, worn from 1808 to 1818, made with long fur-trimmed cape. 2. An 1830s' name for a woman's winter mantle with standing collar, large sleeves, and lined or trimmed with fur.

cape à l'espagnole See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: CAPA.

cape coat See COATS AND JACKETS.

cape collar See NECKLINES AND COLLARS.

cape hat See HEADWEAR.

capelet See BLOUSES AND TOPS and CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS.

capeline See ARMOR and HEADWEAR.

Capé May diamond See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

cape ruby See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

capeskin See LEATHERS.

cape sleeve See SHOULDERS AND SLEEVES.

Capezio® See FOOTWEAR: BALLET SLIPPERS.

capless wig See WIGS AND HAIRPIECES.

cap of dignity See HEADWEAR: CAP OF MAINTENANCE.

cap of estate See HEADWEAR: CAP OF MAINTENANCE.

cap of maintenance See HEADWEAR.

capot See COATS AND JACKETS: CAPOTE.

capote 1. See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS. 2. See COATS AND JACKETS. 3. See HEADWEAR.

capot-ribo See HEADWEAR.

cappuccio See HEADWEAR: CHAPERON.

caprice See COATS AND JACKETS.

Capri-length panty girdle See UNDERGARMENTS: GIRDLES.

caprioll See HEADWEAR: CABRIOLE HEADDRESS.

Capri pants See PANTS.

caps See HEADWEAR.

cap sleeve See SHOULDERS AND SLEEVES.

Capucci, Roberto * See APPENDIX/DESIGNERS.

capuche See HEADWEAR: CAPUCHE and CAPUCHIN.

Capuchin See HEADWEAR.

Capuchin collar See NECKLINES AND COLLARS.

capuchon 1. See HEADWEAR: CAPUCHIN. 2. See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS.

capucine See HEADWEAR: CAPUCHIN.

Capulet See HEADWEAR.

caraco See COATS AND JACKETS.

caraco corsage See COATS AND JACKETS: CARACO #2.

caracul 1. See FURS: KARAKUL. 2. See KARAKUL CLOTH in alphabetical listing.

carat See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

caravan See HEADWEAR.

caravan bag See HANDBAGS: SAFARI BAG.

carbatina See FOOTWEAR.

carbuncle See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

carcaille See NECKLINES AND COLLARS.

car coat See COATS AND JACKETS.

carded yarn † Yarn made from short fibers, known in the textile industry as staple fibers, that have been subjected to the process of carding. Carding is the first step in making staple fibers into yarns. The fibers are separated, straightened out somewhat, and formed into a weblike mass, after which the web is drawn out and given a greater or lesser degree of twist to form a yarn. Carded yarns have more fibers on the surface and are not so smooth as COMBED YARNS.

cardigan An adjective used to describe collarless garments with round or V-necklines that button down the front. The name is derived from that of James Thomas Brudenell, 7th Earl of Cardigan (1797–1868), the lieutenant general in the British Army during the Crimean War who led the famous charge of the Light Brigade. Needing an extra layer of warmth for the cold Crimean

winter, he wore a sleeveless knitted woolen vest under his uniform. Present-day cardigans do not resemble the original garment. See COATS AND JACKETS: CARDIGAN, NECKLINES AND COLLARS: CARDIGAN, SHIRTS: CARDIGAN, and SWEATERS: CARDIGAN. Shown at SWEATERS: CARDIGAN.

cardinal See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS.

cardinal pelerine See NECKLINES AND COLLARS.

carding See CARDED YARN.

Cardin, Pierre * See APPENDIX/DESIGNERS.

care label Permanently attached label for apparel required by a Federal Trade Commission ruling of 1972. The label must provide care and maintenance directions. Exceptions include hats, gloves, and footwear; articles selling for less than \$3; items that would be defaced by attaching a label; or items not requiring cleaning.

careless See COATS AND JACKETS.

cargo Adjective used to describe apparel that has cargo pockets. See POCKETS: CARGO. Also see CARGO JUMPSUIT, PANTS: CARGO PANTS, and SHORTS: CARGO SHORTS.

carmagnole See COATS AND JACKETS.

carmeillette See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: CAPUCHON.

Carnaby cap See HEADWEAR: NEWSBOY CAP.

Carnaby dress Simple beltless dress made in fabrics of unusual color combinations with a large white collar. *Der.* Named for Carnaby Street, in London, England, where “mod” fashions originated in 1960s.

Carnaby look Look adopted first in London in connection with the MOD LOOK. Introduced in the United States in 1964, it featured such items as miniskirts; capes for men; polka dot shirts with large flat white collars; low-slung, bell-bottomed trousers; news boy caps; and wide vinyl neckties one day—string ties the next. A major factor in the trend for young men to move away from traditional styling, it also influenced skirt lengths for women, and styling of children’s wear. *Der.* After Carnaby Street, a London back street, behind the grand shopping thoroughfare of Regent Street, where the mod look first appeared in many small boutiques catering to avant-garde young customers. Also see NECKLINES AND COLLARS: CARNABY COLLAR.

Carnegie, Hattie * See APPENDIX/DESIGNERS.

62 carnelian

carnelian See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

carnival collar See NECKLINES AND COLLARS.

carnival lace See LACES: BRIDAL LACE.

Caroline corsage Woman's evening bodice of 1830s made with lace ruffles forming a V in front, extended around shoulders into small cape.

Caroline hat See HEADWEAR.

Caroline sleeve See SHOULDERS AND SLEEVES.

carpenter *Adj.* Describes clothing modeled after or influenced by clothing worn by carpenters. See PANTS: CARPENTER PANTS and APRONS: CARPENTER APRON.

carpenter's apron See APRONS.

carpet bag See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES.

carpet slipper See FOOTWEAR.

carpincho See LEATHERS.

carriage boot See FOOTWEAR.

carriage dress A woman's dress or costume suitable for riding in a carriage. The term was in use from about 1820 to the end of the 19th c. The specific style conformed to current fashions and was frequently trimmed with fur.

carriage parasol See UMBRELLAS AND PARASOLS.

carriage suit Three-piece set for infant, consisting of jacket, pants, and hat. Worn outdoors in baby carriage since the late 1920s.

carriage trade Term coined by merchants (c. 1890–1910) to refer to affluent customers who arrived at the stores in their own carriages. Still sometimes used in reference to upscale customers.

carrick See COATS AND JACKETS.

Carrickmacross lace See LACES.

carryall See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES: TOTE.

carryall clutch See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES.

carrying frocks See LONG CLOTHES.

carryover Apparel styles in a line from one season that are repeated to the next season. See COLLECTION.

Cartier's Famous New York City retail store that sells jewelry. Alfred Cartier and his son, Louis, established the firm in 1898 and by the beginning of the 20th c., they had become the most prestigious jewelers in the world. Among their clients were the king of Portugal, Grand Dukes

and Princes of Russia, the Brazilian royal family, and other royalty and celebrities throughout the world.

cartoon apron See APRONS.

cartoon fashions Apparel imprinted with images of comic strip and cartoon characters. Part of the trend toward LICENSING.

cartoon T-shirt See SHIRTS.

cartoon watch See WATCHES.

cartridge belt See BELTS.

cartridge pleats See CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS.

cartwheel *Adj.* Describes apparel that has the shape of a large, round wheel like those used on carts. For examples see HEADWEAR: CARTWHEEL HAT; SHOULDERS AND SLEEVES: CARTWHEEL SLEEVES; and NECKLINES AND COLLARS: CARTWHEEL RUFF.

casaque See COATS AND JACKETS: CASAQUE and COATS AND JACKETS: CASSOCK #3.

casquin See COATS AND JACKETS: CARACO.

casquin bodice Tight-fitting bodice for daytime dress, similar in cut to man's tail coat (see COATS AND JACKETS: SWALLOW TAIL COAT), closing with buttons down front and worn in 1878.

casaweck See COATS AND JACKETS.

cascade **1.** Ruffles bias-cut from fabric, in circular manner, that fall in folds. **2.** Trimming used in the 19th and early 20th c. made by cutting a narrow piece of fabric on BIAS and pleating it to form repeated shell designs. **3.** Jet pendants of beads with a zigzag edge used at waistline or bodice in 1860s. **4.** See NECKLINES AND COLLARS.

cased body **1.** Man's sleeveless jerkin worn over DOUBLET in second part of 16th c. **2.** Woman's bodice of early 19th c. with series of horizontal pleats or rows of SHIRRING (see CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS) across the front.

cased sleeve See SHOULDERS AND SLEEVES.

casentino See COATS AND JACKETS.

cashambles See CHAUSSEMBLES.

cashgora † Fiber obtained from goats bred in New Zealand that are a cross between female cashmere goats and angora males. The fiber is fine, soft, and strong, has a low to medium luster, and dyes well.

Cashin, Bonnie * See APPENDIX/DESIGNERS.

cashmere † **1.** A fine, soft, downy wool undergrowth produced by the cashmere goat, which is raised in the Kashmir region of India and Pa kistan and parts of northern India, Tibet, Mongolia, Turkmenistan, China, Iran, and Iraq. Similar goats can now be raised in the United States. **2.** Cloth woven from this wool fiber. Synonyms include PASHMINA.

cashmereshawl See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS.

cashmere sweater See SWEATERS.

cashmere work See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES.

casings See CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS.

casque See HEADWEAR.

casquette See HEADWEAR.

Cassini, Oleg * See APPENDIX/DESIGNERS.

cassock See COATS AND JACKETS AND CLERICAL DRESS.

cassock mantle See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS.

Castelbajac, Jean Charles de * See APPENDIX/DESIGNERS.

castellated (kas-tell-ay'-ted) Adjective describing a garment with "squared scallops" at edges, particularly the edge of sleeves or hem. Used in 14th and 15th c. Similar to DAGGING. Also see BATTLEMENT.

caste mark Red mark usually worn in center of forehead by women of India that originally symbolized and identified caste or class membership but which now serves a decorative function. Paste-on caste marks were introduced in U.S. as body jewelry for women in 1968.

Castle, Irene American ball room dancer, married to her dancing partner, Vernon Castle. Together they made tea-dancing the rage in pre-World War I. By 1914 she had started many fashion fads—short earlobe-length hair brushed back off forehead in loose weaves, Dutch lace caps, slashed HOBBLE SKIRTS (see under SKIRTS), and dancing shoes with BALLET LACES (see under FOOTWEAR).

castor See HEADWEAR.

casual wear Clothing designed to be worn for occasions that do not require more formal dress. Over time, casual wear has been widely accepted for many activities, including some work situa-

tions. See CASUAL FRIDAY. Related terms include LEISURE WEAR, SPORTSWEAR.

casual work days/casual Friday Working days identified by business or industry when employees can wear casual dress to work. For many companies, the selected day is Friday.

casula See CLERICAL DRESS: CHASUBLE.

catagan See HAIRSTYLES: CADO-GAN and WIGS AND HAIRPIECES: CLUB WIG.

catalog showroom Setting like a warehouse in which merchandise is sold from a catalog or floor samples.

catcher's mask See MASKS.

catch stitch See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES.

category killer A specialty discounter that "kills" the competition by concentrating on having the best selection at the best price of a single product. Smaller independent stores that carry the same type of merchandise are generally unable to compete with a "category killer."

cater cap See HEADWEAR.

Catherine II Married in 1745 to Peter III of Russia, who ascended the throne in 1762, was deposed, and his crown usurped by Catherine. A major fashion influence of her time, one of her dresses, worn to receive the Turkish ambassador in 1775, was trimmed with many diamonds and 4,200 magnificent pearls. During her reign, coiffures were limited in height to about 36".

Catherine-wheel farthingale See FARTHINGALE.

catogan wig See WIGS AND HAIRPIECES: CLUB WIG.

cat's eye See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

cat stitch See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES: CATCH STITCH.

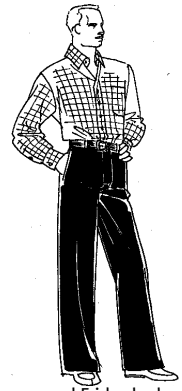
cat suit See ACTIVEWEAR.

cattlehide See LEATHERS.

caudebec See HEADWEAR.

caul **1.** See HEADWEAR. **2.** See WIGS AND HAIRPIECES.

cauliflower wig See WIGS AND HAIRPIECES.



casual Friday look

caution fee Fee paid by American designer or manufacturer to attend showing of a Paris couturier. That fee, which may be equal to cost of one or two items, can be applied to purchases.

cavalier *Adj.* Describes apparel derived from or inspired by clothing worn by partisans of King Charles I of England (1625–1649). Among the styles favored by cavalier men were long, curled hairstyles, large-brimmed hats decorated with feathers, wide, flat collars decorated with lace, wide cuffed boots, and full hip-length capes. For examples see HEADWEAR: CAVALIER HAT, NECKLINES AND COLLARS: CAVALIER COLLAR, and SHOULDERS AND SLEEVES: CAVALIER SLEEVE.



cavalier style 1630

cavu shirt See SHIRTS.

cawdebink See HEADWEAR: CAUDEBEC.

cawdor cape See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: GLENGARRY CAPE.

caxon See WIGS AND HAIRPIECES.

ceint (sant) Man's or woman's belt or girdle worn in the 14th and 15th c. Also spelled *seint*.

celata See ARMOR: SALETT.

cellophane Generic name, once a trademark, for thin transparent film made of acetate. Used in ribbon-sized strips to cover paper fibers imitating straw or used alone as synthetic straw for hats, handbags, etc.

celluloid collar See NECKLINES AND COLLARS.

cellulose Basic substance, a carbohydrate, contained in all vegetable fibers, and certain manufactured fibers, including ACETATE and RAYON.

cervellière See ARMOR.

ceryphalos See HEADWEAR.

CFDA See COUNCIL OF FASHION DESIGNERS OF AMERICA.

CGMM See COMPUTER GRADING AND MARKER MAKING.

chaconne See TIES.

chaddah See CHADOR #1.

chador/chaddar/chadri **1.** An all-enveloping shapeless cape worn by women in some Muslim

countries. The exact cut and how it is worn varies from country to country. In some cases, it is worn with a head scarf, or it may cover the wearer from head to toe and have netting over the eyes. In Afghanistan, this garment is called a *burka*. Also spelled *chadder*, *chaddah*, *chadur*, *chadar*, *chudder*, *chuddar*. **2.** An Indo-Iranian shawl or mantle about three yards in length. Also called *uttariya*. **3.** Indian shawls wrapped around the shoulders or waist by Hindu men.

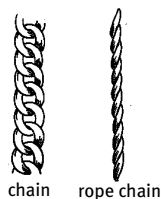


chaddar or burka

chadur See CHADDAR #1.

chaffers See HEADWEAR: ENGLISH HOOD.

chain **1.** Series of connected loops or links made of metal, plastic, or tortoise shell used for dosings or worn as an ornamental accessory in the form of necklace, bracelet, or belt. Chains are called by various names according to shape of links—**cobra chain** is composed of two rows of triangular-shaped links that alternate in a flat effect. **Herringbone chain** is made of small slanting links giving a flat effect. **Roped chain** is composed of two (or more) pieces of chain twisted and wound together like rope. **2.** Adjective used to describe items of apparel that incorporate chains into their design. See BELTS: CHAIN BELT, CLOSURES: CHAIN CLOSURE, HEADWEAR: CHAIN HAT, FOOTWEAR: LOAFER, JEWELRY: CHAIN BRACELET and CHAIN NECKLACE.



chain

rope chain

chain mail See ARMOR: MAIL.

chain store Centralized retail organization that owns and operates a number of retail outlets in different locations that are similar in the lines of merchandise they sell and in their methods of operation.

chainse (shens) Medieval garment of the 11th and 12th c. that was worn over a CHEMISE (see UNDERGARMENTS) and may have been worn as a house dress or perhaps as a summer garment, as it was made of washable, lightweight fabric, probably white linen.

chain stitch See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES.

chainstitched embroidery See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES.

chalcidony See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

chalk stripes See PRINTS, STRIPES, AND CHECKS.

challis † (shal'-lee) Soft, plain weave fabric made of wool, rayon staple, cotton, or manufactured fiber blends. Supple and lightweight, it is often printed in small floral patterns. Generally used for women's dresses and sportswear, infant's wear, and robes.

chamarre (shah-mar) An academic robe made like a long full coat with sleeves full at the shoulders—usually fur-lined and decorated with braid and passementerie. Introduced about 1490 in England; later referred to a judge's gown. Also spelled *chammer*, *chymer*, *samarra*, *samarre*, *shamew*. Also see CLERICAL DRESS: SIMAR.

chambord mantle/chambard mantle See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS.

chambray † (sham'-bray) A broad class of plain weave fabrics made with colored yarns in the lengthwise direction and white yarns in the crosswise direction. May be a plain color, striped, or checked. Usually made of cotton, manufactured fibers, or a blend of the two.

Chambre Syndicale de la Couture Parisienne (sham'-br san'-dee-kale de lah koo'-ture pah-ree-zee-en) An association of Parisian couturiers founded in 1868 as an outgrowth of medieval guilds that regulates its members in regard to piracy of styles, dates of openings for collections, number of models presented, relations with press, questions of law and taxes, and promotional activities. Formation of the organization was brought about by Charles Frederick Worth. An affiliated school was organized in 1930 called L'Ecole de la Chambre Syndicale de la Couture. Since 1975, this organization has worked within the FÉDÉRATION FRANÇAISE DE COUTURE, DU PRÊT-À-PORTER DES COUTURIERS ET DES CRÉATEURS DE MODE.

Chambre Syndicale de la Mode (sham'-br san'-dee-kale de lah mode) French official organization of milliners operating like the CHAMBRE SYNDICALE DE LA COUTURE PARISIENNE.

Chambre Syndicale de la Mode Masculine (sham'-br san'-dee-kale de lah mode mas'-ku-leen) Organization of couture and men's ready-

to-wear designers formed in 1975 as another vehicle for promotion working within the FÉDÉRATION FRANÇAISE DE COUTURE, DU PRÊT-À-PORTER DES COUTURIERS ET DES CRÉATEURS DE MODE.

Chambre Syndicale des Paruriers (sham'-br san'-dee-kale deh pa-roo'-yer) An association comprised of accessory houses in Paris that produce bags, belts, feathers, flowers, gloves, and umbrellas.

Chambre Syndicale du Prêt-à-Porter (sham'-br san'-dee-kale duh pret ah por-tay') Organization of couture and women's ready-to-wear designers formed in 1975 as another vehicle for promotion working within the FÉDÉRATION FRANÇAISE DE COUTURE, DU PRÊT-À-PORTER DES COUTURIERS ET DES CRÉATEURS DE MODE.

chammer See CHAMARRE.

chamois See LEATHERS.

chamois cloth † (sham-wah') Soft cotton fabric that is either knitted or woven. Made with a fine soft nap in imitation of chamois-dyed sheepskin. Should not be shortened or confused with CHAMOIS (See under LEATHERS), as this refers to leather and a leather-tanning process.

chamois tanning See LEATHERS.

chandelier earrings See JEWELRY.

Chanel bag See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES.

Chanel, Gabrielle * See APPENDIX/DESIGNERS.

Chanel suit Classic women's suit style originated by Gabrielle Chanel in the 1920s and revived in the 1960s. It had a collarless, CARDIGAN-style jacket, and the 1960s version was frequently made of plaid fabric with a braid trim.

changeable earrings See JEWELRY.

changeable effect † An iridescent effect in fabric that is achieved by using lengthwise and crosswise yarns dyed different colors. Usually made in silk or lustrous manufactured fibers in fabrics such as TAFFETA to achieve the most dramatic effect. Synonyms: *glace* (gahs-ay'), *shot*.

changeable taffeta See CHANGEABLE EFFECT.

change pocket See POCKETS: TICKET POCKET.



Chanel suit 1960s

change purse See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES.

channel setting See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

Chantilly lace See LACES.

chapeau See HEADWEAR.

chapeau à la Charlotte See HEADWEAR: CHARLOTTE.

chapeau bras See HEADWEAR.

chapeau claqué See HEADWEAR: OPERA HAT.

chapeau cloche See HEADWEAR.

chapel cap See HEADWEAR: CHAPEL VEIL.

chapel de fer See ARMOR.

chapel-length train See LENGTHS.

chapel veil See HEADWEAR.

chaperon See HEADWEAR.

chaperone See HEADWEAR: CHAPERON.

chapiney See FOOTWEAR: CHOPINE.

chaplet See HEADWEAR.

chaps See PANTS.

Charlie Chaplin 1. See COATS AND JACKETS 2. See FOOTWEAR: CHARLIE CHAPLIN TOE.

Charlotte See HEADWEAR.

Charlotte Corday cap See HEADWEAR.

Charlotte Corday fichu See SCARVES.

charm See JEWELRY.

charm bracelet See JEWELRY.

charm necklace See JEWELRY.

charro pants See PANTS.

Chase, Edna Woolman Editor-in-chief of American *Vogue* magazine from 1914 to 1952; also editor of British *Vogue*, first published in 1916, and French *Vogue*, 1920. Considered one of the most able and competent fashion authorities. One of her outstanding achievements was the introduction in 1914 of a society-sponsored fashion show with live models called “Fashion Fête,” the beginning of her long promotion of American designers.

chasebles See CHAUSSEMBLES.

chasing See JEWELRY.

chasseur jacket See COATS AND JACKETS.

chastity belt Beltlike device worn by women in the Middle Ages to ensure marital fidelity.

chasuble See CLERICAL DRESS.

chatelaine (shat'-eh-lane) 1. Ornamental device of oxidized silver, silver-plated metal, or cut steel suspended at woman's waistline or hooked to belt

to hold small items such as scissors, thimble case, tape measure, penknife, watch, keys, or buttonhook. Worn in last half of 19th c. See CORDELIÈRE.

2. Antique silver or plated scent bottle worn around neck on a long chain in 1980s. *Der.* French, “lady of the castle.” Also see JEWELRY and WATCHES.

chatelaine bag See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES.

chatelaine watch See WATCHES.

chati cat See FURS: SPOTTED CAT.

chatoyancy See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

chausembles See CHAUSSEMBLES.

chausons (show-son') French equivalent of the English under pants, called BRAIES (see UNDERGARMENTS), worn from the 5th through the 13th c.

chausse (shos) 1. See ARMOR. 2. Stockings and trunks cut in one piece similar to contemporary tights. First worn in Norman period (1066–1154). Later in the Middle Ages, they fastened to the upper garment (a DOUBLET) by means of lacers called POINTS. 3. About mid-16th c. chaussees were divided into two parts—upper part then called haut de chaussees, later called TRUNK HOSE and upper stocks. Lower part was called bas de chaussees (ba deh shos), then hose and finally stockings. 4. See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: EPITOGA #2. *Der.* French, “bottom of hose.” Also see LOWER STOCKS.

chaussemles (show'-som-bl) Man's cut-and-sewn hose with attached soles of leather or whalebone worn in Middle Ages. Probably cut on the BIAS to provide some degree of stretch, they were somewhat baggy and ill-fitting as compared to later knitted HOSIERY. Also spelled *chausembles*, *chasebles*, *cashambles*.

chausses en bourse (shos on boorce) Breeches padded so they were fuller at bottom—making a flattened balloon shape—worn in 17th c. *Der.* French, “bag breeches.”

chausses en tonnelet See TRUNK HOSE.

chaussures à crics See FOOTWEAR.



chatelaine #1



chaussemles
15th c.

cheat 1. Man's waistcoat or vest of 17th c. with expensive fabric on front and poorer quality in back. 2. 19th-c. term for man's false shirt front with collar attached worn instead of a full shirt.

chechia See HEADWEAR.

check See PRINTS, STRIPES, AND CHECKS.

checked gingham See GINGHAM.

checkerboard checks See PRINTS, STRIPES, AND CHECKS.

checkerboard hose See HOSIERY.

checkered-apron man English barbers of 16th c. distinguished by the checked pattern of their aprons. Also see BLUE-APRONED MEN and GREEN-APRONED MEN.

checks See PRINTS, STRIPES, & CHECKS.

cheek wrappers See HEADWEAR: DORMEUSE.

cheeks-and-ears See HEADWEAR.: COIF #6 and ORRELET.

cheetah See FURS.

chef's apron See APRONS.

chef's hat See HEADWEAR.

Chelsea look Styles worn by the Chelsea Set, young people who frequented a London area called Chelsea that was popular with artists and writers. Trends changed from time to time and were usually copied in other countries as items chosen by this group had wide influence on general fashion trends. In the late 1940s and 1950s, the look was tight jeans from U.S.; in the late 1960s, old uniforms including nurses' or policemen's uniforms, red guardsmen's tunics, and navy overcoats were all featured. Also see NECKLINES AND COLLARS: CHELSEA COLLAR and FOOTWEAR: BEATLE BOOT.

chemise (shem-ees') 1. See UNDERGARMENTS. 2. Dress style that derives from the style of the undergarment called a chemise. Chemise-type dresses are characterized by a loose fit. If they are belted, belts are generally located at hipline or under the bust and the dress is unfitted at the anatomical waistline. Periods in which such styles were worn by women included the Directoire and Empire periods (c. 1795–1820), the 1920s, chemise #2 1959



the 1960s, and the 1990s. Also called "the sack." Der. French "shift" or "shirt."

chemise gown See PERDITA CHEMISE in alphabetical listing.

chemise slip See UNDERGARMENTS.

chemisette (shem-ee-zet') 1. See SCARVES. 2. See BLOUSES AND TOPS. 3. See VESTEE. 4. See SHIRTS: HABIT SHIRT.

chemisette à jabot (ah zha'-bo) Embroidered or pleated ruffle of 1850s and 1860s worn as a fill-in at front opening of a REDINGOTE (see COATS AND JACKETS: REDINGOTE #5) showing from neck to waist.

chemisette garter Vertical supporter for hose attached to the corset in 1830s and 1840s.

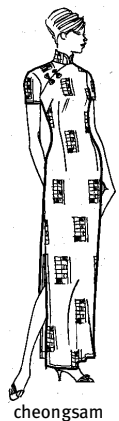
chemise tucker See SCARVES: CHEMISETTE.

chenille † Fabrics made from chenille yarns. These yarns have a fuzzy surface with short fibers projecting on all sides. Chenille fabrics may be woven or knitted. When woven, they are usually made with the chenille yarns in the crosswise direction.

chenille embroidery See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES.

chenille lace See LACES.

cheongsam Chinese woman's dress originating in Shanghai, China, in the late 1930s in an attempt to blend traditional Chinese and Western styles. It has a high, close-fitting collar, diagonal front opening that closes with frogs or buttons, short sleeves, a snug fit, and a side slit running from the bottom of the hem and reaching, in more daring versions, as high as the thigh. Used as a basis for Western designs, most notably in housecoats and dresses. Synonyms: *qi pao*, *Chinese dress*, and *mandarin dress*.



cheongsam

Cheruit, Madeleine * See APPENDIX/DESIGNERS.

cherusse See NECKLINES AND COLLARS.

chesterfield See COATS AND JACKETS.

Chesterfield, 6th Earl of A British fashion leader in the 1830s and 1840s after whom the CHESTERFIELD OVERCOAT (see under COATS AND JACKETS) was named.

chest-high boot See FOOTWEAR: WADERS.

chesticore See COATS AND JACKETS: JU STAU-CORPS.

chest measurement **1.** Men: distance around body at fullest part of upper torso, one of the measurements by which suits are sold. **2.** Women: measurement around the body taken with tape in front placed across front of body from armhole seam to armhole seam at point above bust and across the back. Differs from the **bust measurement** taken at fullest part of bosom.

cheviot † (shev'-ee-ott) **1.** Rough surfaced, hairy fabric made in a plain or twill weave from wool, manufactured fibers, or blends. Does not hold a crease well and, therefore, is generally used for casual clothing. **2.** Cotton shirting woven with fairly heavy yarns in checked, striped, or small figured patterns.

chevron **1.** Motif consisting of two straight lines meeting to form an inverted V. **2.** Badge of these V stripes worn on sleeve by policemen, firemen, and the military to indicate rank.

chevrans Trimmings for women's clothes introduced in mid-1820s, usually a zigzag band near hem of skirt.

chic **1.** *n.* The quality of being very much in style. **2.** *Adj.* Smart, sophisticated, stylish.

chicken skin See LEATHERS.

chicken-skin gloves See GLOVES AND GLOVE CONSTRUCTIONS.

chiffon † **1.** Thin transparent fabric made in a plain weave. It drapes well and is made from tightly twisted or CREPE YARNS. Originally made in silk; now also made in manufactured fibers. Dyed solid colors or often printed in floral designs. Used for sheer dresses, blouses, and scarves. **2.** A trifle or bit of feminine finery. *Der.* French, *chiffe*, "rag."

chignon See HAIRSTYLES.

chignon cap See HEADWEAR.

chignon strap See HEADWEAR.

chill mask See MASKS: HOT MASK.

chimere/chimer See CLERICAL DRESS.

chimney-pot hat See HEADWEAR: TOP HAT.

China doll hairstyle See HAIRSTYLES.

china grass See RAMIE.

China mink See FURS.

China ribbon **1.** Narrow ribbon, about 1/8" wide, woven with a plain edge popular in mid-19th c.

for China ribbon embroidery. See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES: ROCOCO.

China silk † Soft, lustrous silk fabric in a plain weave that may have slight texture due to use of irregular yarns. Made in China and Japan; originally handmade in China as early as 1200 B.C., the name is also applied to machine-made fabrics of a similar type.

chinchilla See FURS.

chinchilla cloth † Thick, heavyweight coating fabric of all wool, or wool and cotton distinguished by curly nubs on the surface. **1.** Woven as a double cloth with a plain back and a satin face. Extra crosswise yarns added to the face of fabric are loosely floated over the surface. When napped and rubbed into curled tufts, these yarns form distinctive nubs on the surface. Less expensive fabric is not woven in the same manner and may have a different surface effect. **2.** A similar fabric made by knitting and brushing surface yarns into nubs.

chin cloak See SCARVES.

chiné See PRINTS, STRIPES, AND CHECKS: WARP PRINT.

Chinese collar See NECKLINES AND COLLARS.

Chinese design Design composed of motifs such as dragons, lanterns, clouds, and mountains, in style typical of Chinese paintings and embroideries.

Chinese dog See FURS.

Chinese dress See CHEONGSAM.

Chinese embroidery See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES.

Chinese jacket See COATS AND JACKETS: COOLIE COAT.

Chinese knot Ornamental knot of covered cord used as trimming on apparel. Copied from traditional ornaments on Chinese robes.

Chinese lamb See under FURS: KARACUL.

Chinese look Adaptations of Chinese styles in U.S. including items such as COOLIE COATS and HATS, CHINESE PAJAMAS, MANDARIN COATS, MANDARIN NECKLINES, and Chinese dresses with side slit called CHEONGSAM. When China opened its doors to West in early 1970s, there was a revival of interest in Chinese fashions resulting in such styles as the basic worker's suit—or MAO SUIT,—quilted jackets, the CHINESE SHOE, and denim

coolie coats. St. Laurent featured Chinese ensembles in 1977 that included small versions of red coolie hats, coolie-type jackets of red and gold brocade with frog closings and mandarin collars; and pants tapered to hem worn with boots having flared tops.

Chinese lounging robe See SLEEPWEAR AND LOUNGEWEAR.

Chinese pajamas See SLEEPWEAR AND LOUNGEWEAR.

Chinese Raccoon See FURS: USSURIAN RACCOON.

Chinese shoe See FOOTWEAR.

Chinese slipper See FOOTWEAR: KAMPSKATCHA SLIPPER.

chinner See SCARVES: CHIN CLOAK.

chino † (chee'-no) Durable cotton, firmly woven with a fine steep twill and dyed a yellowish-tan or khaki color. Contemporary versions are also dyed in many colors. Originally used for summer uniforms for the U.S. Army, by the 1950s the fabric had been adopted by teenagers for school and general wear, particularly for pants. Now used for a wide variety of casual clothing.

chinoise, à la (shin' waaz, ah lah) French phrase meaning "from the Chinese." Often used as an English fashion term to describe items of apparel that show Chinese influences.

chinoiserie (shin-waaz-ze-ree') Those designs in textiles, fashion, and the decorative arts that derive from Chinese styles.

chinos See PANTS.

chin stays See HEADWEAR.

chintz † Medium-weight cotton or blended fabric with a glazed or shiny finish that may be a plain color or printed with floral, bird, or other designs. Originally a fabric for slipcovers and draperies; now also used for variety of items such as bedwear, shorts, blouses, skirts, dresses, and rainwear. *Der.* Indian, *chint*, name for a gaudily printed fabric of cotton.

chip See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

chip bonnet See HEADWEAR.

chip straw Wood or straw cut in fine strips for hats or baskets. Used for women's hats in 18th c. and for women's CHIP BONNETS (see under HEADWEAR) in the 19th c.

chique-tades See SLASHINGS.

chiton (ki'-tawn)

Garment worn in ancient Greece that consisted of a rectangle of fabric wrapped around the body and fastened at the shoulders with one or more pins. A number of variations of this basic style were worn at different points in Greek history. They were as follows: (1) **chitoniskos** (ki-tawn-iss'-kos): Worn by men from about 800 to 550 B.C., usually short, made of patterned wool, and fitted closely to the body; (2) **doric peplos**: Worn by women from about 800 to 550 B.C., usually reaching to the ankles, pinned at the shoulder with a large pin, made of patterned wool, and fitted closely to the body; (3) **ionic chiton** (eye-ohn'-ik ki'-tawn): Worn from 550 B.C. to 480 B.C. and less often from 480 B.C. to 300 B.C. by men and women, either short (for men) or long, made of lightweight wool or of linen and pleated. More fully cut than earlier chitons, it had long, full sleeves fastened with many small brooches at the shoulder; (4) **doric chiton**: Worn from 400 B.C. to 100 B.C. by men and from 450 B.C. to 300 B.C. by women and made of wool, linen, or silk, the doric chiton was generally short when worn by men and long when worn by women. More narrowly fitted than the



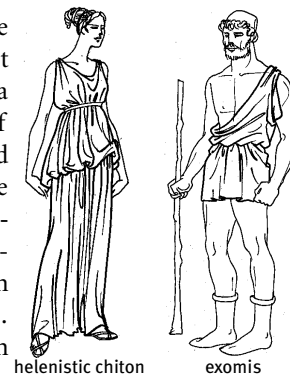
chitoniskos

doric peplos



ionic chiton worn under a shawl

doric chiton



helenistic chiton

exomis

by men and women, either short (for men) or long, made of lightweight wool or of linen and pleated. More fully cut than earlier chitons, it had long, full sleeves fastened with many small brooches at the shoulder; (4) **doric chiton**: Worn from 400 B.C. to 100 B.C. by men and from 450 B.C. to 300 B.C. by women and made of wool, linen, or silk, the doric chiton was generally short when worn by men and long when worn by women. More narrowly fitted than the

ionic chiton, and sleeveless, it was fastened at each shoulder with a single pin. (5) **hellenistic chiton**: Worn by women from 300 to 100 B.C., similar to the doric chiton but narrower, and often belted below the bosom, this chiton was worn long and made of lightweight wool, linen, or silk; (6) **exomis**: Worn by working-class men and slaves in all Greek periods, this chiton was short and fastened over one shoulder and probably made from sturdy, durable wool fabric.

chitoniskos See CHITON.

chitterlings (chit-er-lings) Popular term used in the 18th and 19th c. for frills or ruffles on front of man's shirt.

chlaire See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS.

chlamydon (kla'mee-don) A type of outer garment for women in ancient Greece that was pleated to a band of fabric and worn under the left arm and over the right shoulder.



chlamydon

chlamys See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS.

Chloé * See APPENDIX/DESIGNERS: KARL LAGERFELD and STELLA MCCARTNEY.

chlorspinel See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS: SPINEL.

choir-boy collar See NECKLINES AND COLLARS.

choir robe Ankle-length closed robes similar to academic gowns worn by singers in church choirs. See ACADEMIC COSTUME.

choker Term used for accessories and clothing that fit high on the neck. See NECKLINES AND COLLARS and JEWELRY.

choli See BLOUSES AND TOPS.

choori-dars See PANTS.

chopine See FOOTWEAR.

chou (shoo) **choux** (pl.) 1. Frilly pouf of fabric used at neckline. 2. Large rosette used to trim gowns in late 19th and early 20th c. 3. See HEADWEAR. 4. See HAIRSTYLES: CHIGNON. *Der.* French, "cabbage."

christening dress Any dress or suit worn by infants for their baptism. Until the mid-20th c. both boys and girls wore extremely long white dresses, elaborately trimmed with tucks, lace,

and hand em broidery. In recent decades, boys have been dressed either in white suits or in dresses. Dresses for both boys and girls today may be shorter, but would usually cover the feet.



christening dress 1898

chrome tanning See LEATHERS.

chronograph See WATCHES.

chronometric watch See WATCHES.

chrysoberyl See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

chrysolite See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS: PERIDOT.

chrysoptase See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

chubby See COATS AND JACKETS.

chuddah/chudder See CHADDAR.

chukka (chuh'-ka) Periods in the game of polo. Used to describe modern clothes and accessories similar to those worn when playing polo. See FOOTWEAR: CHUKKA BOOTS, HEADWEAR: CHUKKA HAT, SHIRTS: POLO SHIRT.

chunky heel See FOOTWEAR.

chunky shoe See FOOTWEAR.

chymer See CHAMARRE.

ciclaton See CYCLAS.

CIM See COMPUTER INTEGRATED MANUFACTURING.

cinch 1. See BELTS. 2. See WAISTLINES: CHINCHED WAISTLINE.

cinch buckle/cinch closing See CLOSURES: D-RING CLOSING.

cincture 1. See BELTS. 2. See CLERICAL DRESS.

cinglation See CYCLAS.

cingulum 1. See BELTS. 2. See CLERICAL DRESS.

Cipullo, Aldo * See APPENDIX/DESIGNERS.

Circassian round robe (ser-kash'-yan) Early 1820s evening dress of gossamer gauze made with low square-cut neckline, short sleeves, high waistline, and skirt elaborately decorated down the front and above the hem with festoons of knotted ribbon. *Der.* Caucasian tribe of Circassia, a historical region between the western end of the Caucasus range and the Kuban River, north of the Black sea.

Circassian wrapper (ser-kash'-yan) Loose wrap, cut somewhat like a nightgown, worn by women for daytime in Empire Period, 1813. *Der.*

Caucasian tribe of Circassia, a historical region west of the Caucasus mountains and north of the Black Sea.

circassienne Late-18th c. version of the polonaise (a draped skirt) worn by women just before French Revolution. *Der.* French, “circassian.”

circle/circular Adjective used to describe garments that are shaped round, like a circle. See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: CIRCULAR, SKIRTS: CIRCLE, SLEEVES: CIRCLE, and POCKETS: ROUND POCKET.

circular See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS.

circular hem See CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS.

circular knit † Fabric knitted in a tubular shape with no SELVAGES. Made either by hand or machine. Hose knitted in this manner have no seams.

circular ruffle Ruffle cut from circle of fabric rather than straight across the grain, making graceful folds less bulky than a gathered ruffle. Also see CASCADE RUFFLE.

circumfolding hat See HEADWEAR: OPERA HAT.

ciré † (sear-ray') Finishing process or the fabric produced by the process in which wax or other compounds are applied to the surface of a fabric, after which a hot roller is passed over the surface to produce a high polish. If the fibers in the fabric are heat sensitive, the fibers will fuse and the effect will be permanent.

ciselé velvet † (seez-el-ay') A fabric with a raised pattern of velvet figures on a satin ground formed by cut and uncut loops—with the cut pile being higher.

citrine See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

city boots See FOOTWEAR.

city pants/city shorts Terms coined by the fashion-industry newspaper *Women's Wear Daily* in 1968 for women's pants or shorts suitable for town wear. Also see PANTS: CITY PANTS.

civet cat See FURS.

Claiborne, Liz * See APPENDIX/DESIGNERS.

clamdiggers/Clamdiggers® See PANTS.

claque See HEADWEAR.

Clara Bow hat See HEADWEAR.

Clarence See FOOTWEAR.

Clarissa Harlowe bonnet/hat See HEADWEAR.

Clarissa Harlowe corsage Evening-dress bodice with off-the-shoulder neckline, folds

caught at the waist by band of ribbon, and short sleeves trimmed with two or three lace ruffles. Worn in late 1840s. *Der.* From heroine in novel *Clarissa, or the History of a Young Lady*, by Samuel Richardson, published in 1747–48.

classic Apparel made in a style that continues to be fashionable over a long period of time, and that may return to high fashion at intervals. When revived, classic fashions retain the basic line of the original style, but are sometimes altered in minor details, e.g., COATS AND JACKETS: CARDIGAN, BLAZER, TRENCH COAT, and POLO COAT, OR CHEMISE, SHIRTWAIST DRESS.

classic look See BROOKS BROTHERS® and PREPPY LOOKS.

classic pull-back See HAIRSTYLES.

classification (class) A general type of merchandise that is housed within an individual department. Examples: sportswear, eveningwear, or lingerie.

class ring See JEWELRY.

claw-hammer coat See COATS AND JACKETS.

clayshooter's vest See VESTS.

clean-stitched seam See CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS.

cleats See FOOTWEAR.

cleavage 1. See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

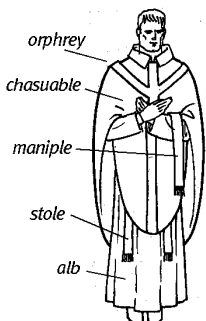
2. Separation between a woman's breasts, made more obvious when a low neckline is worn.

clerical cape See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS.

clerical collar See CLERICAL DRESS.

CLERICAL DRESS

Items of clothing worn by members of the clergy either during rituals being celebrated or as a means of identifying their clerical status within their religion. Also called *ecclesiastical dress*. These entries do not include religious garb or symbols worn by lay members of a religion. Such entries will be found in the alphabetical listing.



clerical dress: priest

alb Full-length long-sleeved LITURGICAL ROBE (see ROBE #2) with drawstring neckline or

cowl hood worn by priests at Mass. Originally of white linen, now often of blended cotton and man-made fibers. *Der.* Latin, “white.”

amice (am’ees) A strip of linen placed around the shoulders and tied in position to form a collar worn by priests saying mass.

bäffchen See CLERICAL DRESS: GENEVA BANDS.

biretta (bi-ret’-tah) **birretta/berrette/barrette**

1. Stiff square clerical cap with three or four upright projections on top radiating from center, sometimes finished with a pompon.

2. 16th-c.: a round cap that later became square on top when hatters learned to use a rigid frame. Worn by clergy today, e.g., cardinals and bishops.

calotte (ka-loht’) **calot/callot** Tiny, dose-fitting skullcap cut in shaped gores often with a tab at center of top worn by Roman clergy, priests, and monks in early Christian orders—now worn by the Pope. Also called *zucchetto* (zook-ket’-toe).

camauro (ka-mao’-row) Red velvet, ermine-trimmed cap slightly larger than a skullcap formerly worn by Pope of Roman Catholic church.

campagus (kam-pa’-gus) Shoe worn by bishops in Western Church, particularly Roman Catholic, sometimes Episcopal.

capuche See HEADWEAR.

cassock 1. Full-length liturgical robe, made like a coat with standing collar, worn by clergy, altar boys, and choirs, sometimes under white SURPLICE or COTTA (see under CLERICAL DRESS). Also called *soutane* (soo-tahn’). 2. Short front buttoned jacket worn by clerics.



cassock

casula (kas-oo’-lah) Latin name of CHASUBLE (see under CLERICAL DRESS).

chasuble (chaz’-yu-behl) Sleeveless clerical garment, shaped somewhat like a PONCHO (see under CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS), with round neckline and open sides. Sometimes has a Y-shaped band from neck to hem called the ORPHREY (see under CLERICAL DRESS). Worn as part of vestments at the cele-

bration of Mass in the early Christian church, now worn by priests over the cassock. *Der.* Latin, *casula*, “cloak.”

chimere (she’-mar) /**chimer** Full-length sleeveless robe, similar to an academic robe worn by Anglican bishops. Extra full lawn sleeves were attached to armholes.

cincture (sink’-cher) Twisted rayon, silk, or rope belt—approximately eight feet in length—worn by clergy with the ALB (see under CLERICAL DRESS). It is worn doubled, with one end pulled through the loop and the long ends hanging free. With tassels on the end, called **traditional**; when knotted at the end, called **contemporary**. Shown at COPE.

cingulum (sin-goo’-lum) Belt worn with liturgical garments since Middle Ages.

clerical cape Three-quarter-length cape of wool MELTON with satin lining, small velvet collar, and braided frog closing worn by clergy.

clerical collar Stiff white standing band collar worn by clergy with suit or with liturgical robes. May be fastened in back as a **Roman collar** or have a narrow opening in front. White collar is sometimes half covered by a similar black collar which may be attached to the CASSOCK or to a biblike RABAT (see under CLERICAL DRESS). Also see CLERICAL DRESS: GENEVA BANDS.

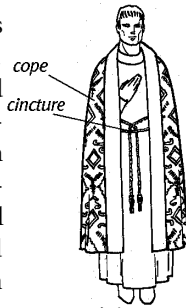
clerical front An adjustable shirt front worn by clergymen with a black business suit or under a pulpit robe. Fits around the neck usually with black collar on top of a white collar. Ties secure the garment at the waist. Usually made in black faille or wool with or without a center pleat down the front. Also called *shirt front*.

clerical shirt Black or gray shirt with short or long sleeves styled with a fly-front and standing CLERICAL COLLAR (see under CLERICAL DRESS) worn by clergymen. A second collar of white may be inserted inside the neckline. Frequently has white cuffs. Formerly made of lightweight wool, now made in wash-and-wear fabrics.

colobium (koh-lo’-bee-um) A liturgical garment derived from a Roman secular garment consisting of a long linen tunic, either sleeveless

or with short sleeves. It was replaced by the DALMATIC.

cope Ornately embroidered semi-circular mantle, fastened across the chest with an elaborate clasp arrangement worn on ceremonial occasions by the Pope and dignitaries of the Roman Catholic Church and by priests offering the Benediction.



cotta (coat'-tah) Clerical surplice made like a full, short, white overtunic, gathered into a narrow rounded yoke with long, full bell-shaped sleeves. Worn by clergy over cassock and by choir members over long robes.

dalmatic See DALMATIC in alphabetical listing.

ecclesiastical vestments Garments worn by the clergy for religious services.

fanons Two decorative LAPPETS attached to back of miter worn by the Pope, which hung down over the shoulders. These may originally have been used to hold the miter on the head. See CLERICAL DRESS: MITER.

ferraiolo (fair-ay-o'-lo) A full-length black circular cape worn as an outer garment by clerics over other vestments for ceremonial occasions such as receptions, academic occasions, or banquets.

fisherman's ring Gold ring used at investiture of the Pope of the Roman Catholic Church. The figure of St. Peter in a fisherman's boat is engraved on the ring along with name of the Pope.

Geneva bands Collar consisting of two short white linen tabs hanging down from the neckline, attached to a string tied around the neck. Worn mainly by clergy. Also called *shortbands* and *bäffchen* (bef'-ken). *Der.* Originated by Swiss Calvinist clergy in Geneva, Switzerland.

Geneva gown Black clerical gown worn by Calvinists and later by other Protestant clergy, similar to an academic robe and often worn with two vertical white linen bands at the neck called Geneva bands.

Geneva hat Wide-brimmed, high-crowned hat worn in late 16th and early 17th c. by Puritan ministers and others.

liturgical robe See ROBE #2.

maniple Narrow ornamental band about 3½ long, worn by Catholic priests on the left arm near the wrist.

mantelletta (mahn-tell-et'-tah) Sleeveless thigh-length circular-cut garment that opens in front and has a small collar. Worn by prelates of Roman Catholic Church over the ROCHET, it is made of silk or wool with two vertical slits for arms. For cardinals it is red, purple, or rose-colored. See CLERICAL DRESS: ROCHET.

mantellone (mahn-tell-own'-nay) Purple ankle-length ecclesiastical mantle, worn over the CASSOCK (see under CLERICAL DRESS) by lesser prelates of Papal court of the Roman Catholic Church.

miter Very tall ornamental headpiece, worn by Catholic and Episcopal church dignitaries, with high separate pointed arches in front and back.



mozetta (mo-zæ'-tah) Elbow-length cape with ornamental hood hanging in back, worn by cardinals and church dignitaries. *Der.* Italian *mozzare*, "to cut short."

orphrey (or'-free) Y-shaped band of embroidery decorating the CHASUBLE (see under CLERICAL DRESS) that extends from each shoulder meeting vertical stripe in center front and back. Also spelled *orfray*, *orfrey*.

pallium A narrow band of white wool that was worn by popes and archbishops. Prelates wore the band with one end falling to the front and the other to the back.

parament (pa'-ra-ment) Synonym for an ornamental Ecclesiastical vestment.

pileolus/pilleolus (pil-eh'-oh-lus) Skullcap worn by Catholic priests and pope under the MITER and TIARA (see under CLERICAL DRESS). *Der.* Latin, "skullcap."

rabat (rab-e; ra-bat) Black dickey or shirt front to which the white CLERICAL COLLAR is attached (see under CLERICAL DRESS). Worn with suits or with liturgical robes by Catholic and Protestant clergy.

rochet (rash'-et) Similar to a SURPLICE (see under CLERICAL DRESS) and worn especially by bishops and abbots.

Roman collar See CLERICAL DRESS: CLERICAL COLLAR.

shirt front See CLERICAL DRESS: CLERICAL FRONT.

short bands See CLERICAL DRESS: GENEVA BANDS.

simar (si-mar') Clerical robe, similar to full-length CASSOCK (see under CLERICAL DRESS), but having short button-on false sleeves and a shoulder cape that does not fasten in front. Worn at home or on the street, but not worn for high church services, particularly by prelates of the Catholic church. Made of white wool for the Pope, black wool with scarlet trimmings for Cardinals, black wool with amaranth red or purple trim for Penitential or mourning days for Bishops, and ash-gray wool for Franciscans. Also worn by seminarians without the false sleeves (thus indicating inferior dignity). Also see CHAMARRE.

soutane See CLERICAL DRESS: CASSOCK #1.

stole Long narrow scarf, part of CLERICAL VESTMENTS worn over the COTTA (see under CLERICAL DRESS) by clergymen.

surplice Loose white overblouse, either waist- or knee-length, gathered to flat yoke with full open sleeves worn by clergy, acolytes, and choir singers. Also see CLERICAL DRESS: COTTA.

tiara (tee-ar'-a) An ancient headpiece, worn by the Pope of the Roman Catholic church, consisting of three coronets placed one on top of the other, each successively smaller.

ventilated collar Stiff white standing collar punctured with holes around the sides and back. Used to support the black CLERICAL COLLAR, creating a white trim at center front and around the edge.

vestments See CLERICAL DRESS: CLERICAL VESTMENTS.

zucchetto See CLERICAL DRESS: CALOTTE.

clerical front See CLERICAL DRESS.

clerical shirt See CLERICAL DRESS.

clip See JEWELRY.

clip-back earring See JEWELRY.

clip closure See CLOSURES.

clip hat See HEADWEAR: BICYCLE CLIP HAT.

clip-on sunglasses See EYEWEAR.

clip-on tie See TIES.

cloak See introduction to CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS.

Cloak and Suit Industry Name given manufacturers of coats and suits when first U.S. census of the clothing industry was made in 1860. This category made up half the total of manufacturing establishments. Originally called *Cloak and Mantilla Manufacturers*, later called *Coat and Suit Industry*.

cloak bag breeches Full oval-shaped man's breeches fastened above or below the knee with decorative points or bows. Worn in early 17th c. Also see BREECHES.

cloche See HEADWEAR.

clock 1. See HOSIERY: CLOCKED HOSE. 2. Triangular gore inserted into a stocking, cape, or collar to make it wider with embroidery over the joined seams. Worn from 16th c. on. Also see HOSIERY.

clog See FOOTWEAR.

cloisonné (kloi-zeh-nay') An enameling technique in which small areas of colored enamel separated by thin metal bands form the design. Popular in 1980s for necklaces, bracelets, earrings, pins, and belt buckles. *Der.* French, "partitioned." Also see under JEWELRY: CLOISONNÉ NECKLACE.

close coat See COATS AND JACKETS.

closed display/closed back display See WINDOW DISPLAYS.

closed dress/closed gown See ROUND DRESS.

closed island displays Display in which merchandise is visible but enclosed behind glass. Often used for especially valuable objects. See SHOWCASE DISPLAY.

closed seam See FOOTWEAR.

closeout Merchandise that remains unsold from a seasonal line. Usually all these remaining items are sold at a discount.

closeout store A discount store to which a retailer sends merchandise from its regular-price store that has been slow to sell or has reached the end of its season.

close-plate buckle See CLOSURES.

close stitch See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES: BUTTONHOLE STITCH #3.

closing 1. Manner in which an item of apparel fastens. Early clothing was draped and held together by belts or pins called FIBULAE. Later

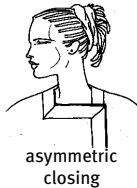
lacing was used, then buttons—with men’s clothing buttoning left to right and women’s buttoning right to left. **2.** The type of device by which a garment or part of a garment is secured. See CLOSURES: CLOSURE.

CLOSURES

closure A device used to close or fasten shoes or a garment. Synonym: *closing*.

abalone button (ah-bah-low-nee’) Type of pearl button made from shell of a mollusk called an ear shell, or sea-ear, found off Pacific coast of the United States.

asymmetric closing Garment closing that fastens at the side or diagonally rather than at the center of the garment.



barred buttonhole See CLOSURES: WORKED BUTTONHOLE.

barrel snaps Tubular-shaped gilded-metal fasteners, used for cloaks and pelisses from 1800 to 1830. Also see COATS AND JACKETS: BAROUCHE COAT.

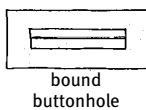
basket button Fashionable metal button in embossed basket weave pattern, used on men’s coats in 18th and 19th c.

belt buckle Any ornamental or functional device, usually plastic or metal, used to fasten a belt.

blazer button Distinctive brass or gold-plated brass button with a monogram, a coat-of-arms, or a crest embossed or engraved on top. Usually sold by the set, which includes three large and four small sleeve buttons. Specifically used on blazers. See COATS AND JACKETS: BLAZERS.

blind eyelet Shoe-industry term for metal eyelet concealed in the inner surface of leather while the outside layer has a punched hole through which shoestring is pulled.

bound buttonhole Buttonhole with edges finished with separate strips of fabric or leather binding.



brass button Gilt button made of brass or of other metals or plastic gilded to simulate

brass. Brass buttons embossed with a large eagle are used on jackets and coats worn by U.S. armed forces. Brass buttons are also used by civilians on various types of apparel.

breasts Term used on tailors’ bills in the 18th c. for waistcoat buttons. Coat buttons were listed as **coats**.

buckle A decorative or functional clasp, usually of metal, wood, or plastic. Consists of a rectangular or curved rim, often with one or more movable tongues. Also a clip device fixed to end of a strap used to fasten to other end of belt or to another strap. Used since earliest times for belts, shoes, and knee breeches.

buckles d’Artois Shoe buckles of enormous size worn from 1775 to 1788. *Der.* Named after the Comte d’Artois, later Charles X of France.

button 1. A decorative ornament used for trimming or a functional fastener. Usually made with holes punched in center or a shank on the back, they close by slipping through a buttonhole or loop. Introduced in the 13th c. as trim, buttons became functional by the 14th c.; by the 16th c., buttons of all types were used. *Der.* French, *bouton*, a round object, a bud, a knob. **2.** See GLOVES AND GLOVE CONSTRUCTIONS.

buttonhole Opening for button to go through in order to secure the garment. Generally classified as either a BOUND or a WORKED buttonhole (see under CLOSURES). The use of buttonholes dates from about the 15th c.

button hooks See CLOSURES: SPEED LACING.

calico button Metal ring covered with calico, sometimes with metal eyelets in center, used mainly for underclothes from 1840s on.

chain closure Laced closing using a metal chain instead of a lacer. Used on vests and blouses, it was a novelty of the late 1960s.

cinch buckle/cinch closure See CLOSURES: RING BUCKLE.

clip closure Metal fastener with a spring-backed device on one side of garment and a ring, eyelet, or slotted fastener on other side. Used mainly on raincoats, jackets, and car coats.

76 closures: close-plate buckle

close-plate buckle Shoe buckle of late 1660s to 1680s made of tutania—an alloy of tin, antimony, and copper—cast in a mold by a street peddler in about fifteen minutes.

coats See CLOSURES: BREASTS.

collar button See CLOSURES: STUD.

covered button Ball or disk-type button covered with fabric either matching or contrasting with garment. Kits of various-sized disks to be covered may be purchased by the home sewer. First used in latter part of 16th c. The button industry in the United States was started in 1826 by Mrs. Samuel Williston, wife of a storekeeper in East Hampshire, Mass., who first covered wooden buttons by hand. Later she invented a machine for this purpose and her factory was credited with one-half of the world production of buttons.

covered zipper Zipper made with fabric tape covering teeth so that teeth do not show when zipper is closed.

crocheted button Shank-type buttons made by crocheting over a disk, a ball, or a barrel-shaped object. Sometimes used on sweaters and formerly used on dresses and coats in Victorian era and early 19th c.

cuff button 1. Small button, usually of mother-of-pearl, sewed on shirt cuff to fasten it. Introduced in 19th c. and used in lieu of *cuff links*.
2. Late 17th c.: used to describe two metal disks connected by links used to replace earlier CUFF STRING (see under CLOSURES).

cuff string String pulled through eyelets on cuff to fasten it. Used in lieu of a button in the 17th c. Also called *sleeve string*.

cut-steel buckle Popular buckle of early 20th c. made of polished steel with jewel-like facets. Used on silk or moiré afternoon or evening shoes and on belts.

death's head button Domed 18th-c. button covered with metal thread or mohair forming an X on top like the cross of the skull and crossbones.

Dorset thread button Brass wire ring covered with cotton threads radiating from center to form a flat button; used on underwear from about 1700 to 1830.

double-breasted closing See DOUBLE-BREASTED in alphabetical listing.

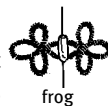
D-ring closure 1. See CLOSURES: RING BUCKLE.
2. Closings on footwear that are D-shaped through which shoe laces are threaded.

fly-front closing Buttonholes, or zipper, inserted under a placket. Developed in latter half of 19th c. for overcoats, particularly the chesterfield, and used on men's or women's trousers.

foil button Silk pasted on paper and glued to reverse side of glass button; patented in 1774.

French portrait buttons Buttons worn about 1790 with profiles of famous people in light color mounted against a black silk background and surrounded with a rim of tin (e.g., profiles of Lafayette, Mirabeau, and Louis XVI).

frog Ornamental fastener using cording or braid through which a soft ball made of cording or a button is pulled. Used for closing garments, especially military uniforms and some Chinese clothes. When introduced in the West from China in last quarter of 18th c., they were named **Brandenburgs** after braid-trimmed uniforms worn by Brandenburg troops of Prussia during the Napoleonic War. Also called *olivettes*.



galosh closure Closing with a metal hook on one side that clips into a metal fastener with several slots in order to adjust the degree of tightness. A closing used for such garments as raincoats, coats, and jackets. *Der.* Similar to closings for galoshes in the early 20th c.

glitter button Any type of button set with rhinestones or imitation gems. Also see CLOSURES: RHINESTONE BUTTON.

glove button Tiny buttons, usually round and often pearlized, used to button long gloves.

gold button Any type of gold colored button, formerly solid gold or plated. Henry VIII had jeweled gold buttons made to match his rings. A record of the 15th c. notes 25 golden buttons, each set with seven pearls, at a cost of 200 gold pieces. In the 16th c., gold buttons set with diamonds and other precious stones were frequently used.

gripper closure Metal fastener in the shape of a large snap used on some types of jackets and raincoats. Also used on children's and infants' clothing, particularly at crotch of pajamas, panties, and pants to enable them to be put on more easily.

hasp Decorative silver fastening, similar to HOOK AND EYE (see under CLOSURES). Used for fastening coats in 17th and 18th c.

hip buttons Term used from late 17th to end of 19th c. for pair of buttons placed on either side of center back pleats of man's suit coat.

hook and eye Closing using a small metal hook on one side and either an embroidered loop or a small metal loop on the other side. Used extensively for shirtwaists and dresses with back closings in late 19th and early 20th c. Almost entirely replaced by the zipper on contemporary clothing.

hook and loop closure See CLOSURES: VELCRO®.

industrial zipper See CLOSURES: ZIPPER.

laced closing Leather thong or cord laced through small metal or embroidered eyelets. Popular method of fastening garments in Middle Ages and in late 1960s. Also used for shoes from 18th c. on. Also see POINTS in alphabetical listing.

lacing studs See CLOSURES: SPEED LACING.

latch buckle Round, square, or oblong metal plates attached to each end of a belt and closed over one another. A swivel from one end of the belt slips through a slot in the other end and turns to fasten.

Leek button Shank-type button with metal edge surrounding a metal shell or mold of pasteboard made at Leek, England, and patented in 1842.

loop and button Closing with a series of corded loops on one side and covered or round buttons on the other side. Used for its decorative effect. Sometimes used on wedding dresses.

machine-made buttonhole Buttonhole made on a sewing machine with a zig-zag stitch or by a special attachment.

mother-of-pearl button Button made from nacre, the inside shell of the oyster. First manufactured in U.S. in 1885 from imported mollusks and later from domestic oysters found in Chesapeake Bay.

neck button Decorative button of mid-17th c. worn at neck of doublet and held closed by loop on opposite side to reveal the fine shirt underneath.

olive button Long, oval-shaped, silk-covered button worn from mid-18th c. on.

olivette See CLOSURES: FROG.

pearl button Classic button for almost any use, originally made from shells. Sometimes called "ocean pearl" until development of plastic in the 1930s, after which imitation pearl buttons were widely used. Also see CLOSURES: MOTHER-OF-PEARL BUTTON.

piped buttonhole Buttonhole similar to BOUND BUTTONHOLE in which PIPING (see under CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS) is used around the opening.

poker chip button Extra-large round, flat button with a shank on the back. *Der.* From size and shape of a poker chip.

rhinestone button Any button set with stones, made of glass or PASTE (see under JEWELRY), that simulates a diamond.

ring buckle Two rings on one end of belt through which opposite belt end threads—first through both, then back through one—and pulls tight. When rings are made in the shape of a "D," called a **D-ring buckle**. Also called *cinch buckle* or *cinch closing*. Borrowed from fastenings on horse bridles and saddle straps and used mainly on belts and cuffs of sleeves.

self-covered button See CLOSURES: COVERED BUTTON.

shank button Button with metal or plastic loop on the back.

shirt button Small mother-of-pearl or imitation pearl button with four holes and a ridge around the edge. Originally used on men's shirts.

shoe buckle Buckles worn on the shoe were very popular in France and Italy about 1660

78 closures: single-breasted closing

and in England during reign of Charles II (1660–1685). Also fashionable in colonial America until about 1770. At first intended to hold shoe in place, the buckle was small in size and worn with a BUTTERFLY BOW (see under FOOTWEAR), later reached larger dimensions. Also see CLOSURES: BUCKLE and PINCH-BECK. Revived in 1870s and at end of 19th and early 20th c., but limited to women's shoes. Revived for both men's and women's shoes in late 1960s.

single-breasted closing See SINGLE-BREASTED in alphabetical listing.

sleeve button **1.** Button at wrist to close cuff or sleeve. **2.** Decorative trim used on sleeves of man's suit coat consisting of two or three buttons placed on outside of cuff. This particular fashion originated in the 18th c. when large cuffs were worn buttoned back to the sleeve.

sleeve string See CLOSURES: CUFF STRING.

slide fastener See CLOSURES: ZIPPER.

snail button Covered button ornamented with FRENCH KNOTS (see EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES) used on men's coats and waistcoats in 18th c.

snap closure Metal fastener used to close a garment at places where there is little strain. Replaced almost entirely in contemporary garments by ZIPPERS and GRIPPERS (see under CLOSURES).

speed lacing Closing on boot consisting of metal hooks replacing eyelets for upper part of lacing. Used particularly on ice skates, ski boots, and hiking boots. Also called *button hooks* or *lacing studs*.

storm flap Large flap that covers a zipper and has buttons and buttonholes to keep the flap in place.

stud Small ornamental closure used since the mid-18th c. that is not fastened to the shirt. Consists of a broader section, a short post, and a smaller buttonlike end that is inserted through an eyelet to fasten a shirt front, neckband, or cuffs. Also called *collar button*.

surplice closing See CLOSURES: WRAP CLOSING.

tab/tabbed closing An extra flap, strap, or loop of fabric, used with buttonhole, buckle, or

snap to close coats, collars, sleeves, and cuffs.

Popular closing for car coats from mid-1960s.

tailored buttonhole See CLOSURES: WORKED BUTTONHOLE.

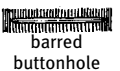
tied closing **1.** Type of closing used on a wrap-style garment (e.g., a sash used on bathrobes, wrap dresses, and skirts to hold the garment closed). **2.** Series of ties used to fasten a garment.

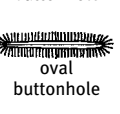
toggle closure Rod-shaped button, usually of wood, attached by rope loop on one side of garment and pulled through similar loop on opposite side. Also see COATS AND JACKETS: TOGGLE COAT.


Velcro® Trademark for a tape woven with minute nylon hooks that mesh with loops on opposite tape. Used on children's and adults' clothing, sportswear, and shoes. First used by astronauts. Generic term for this type of closure is *hook and loop*.

wooden button Made in all sizes and shapes—may be in ball shape with shank on back or disk-shaped. In the late 1930s, larger saucer-shaped buttons tied on with matching corded fabric were used on women's coats.

worked buttonhole Buttonhole made by covering the raw edges of a slit in the fabric with hand or machine stitches. In hand-worked buttonholes, first the slit is made, then the raw edges are covered by embroidering them with a buttonhole stitch. Machine-made worked buttonholes are stitched first, then cut open. A stitch similar to the buttonhole stitch is made by the sewing machine. The shapes of worked buttonholes may vary as follows: **barred** or **rectangular**

buttonhole Worked buttonhole with straight bar, called a bar tack, embroidered across the ends. 

oval buttonhole Worked buttonhole with fan-shaped arrangement of stitches at both ends. 

tailored buttonhole Worked buttonholes with a bar tack at one end and a fan-shaped arrangement of stitches at the other end. 

keyhole buttonhole Worked buttonhole with a bar tack at one end and an area of much enlarged fan-shaped stitches at the

other so as to allow a place for the button shank to rest.

wrap closing Closing by wrapping one side of garment over the other and holding with a belt, sash, button, or snap.

zipper Although the name “zipper” was coined and registered as a trademark by B. F. Goodrich Co. in 1925, the forerunner of this device was invented in 1891 by Witcomb B. Judson. He called it a *clasp locker*. The design was improved by Gideon Sundback who manufactured *Hookless Fasteners* used for corsets, gloves, sleeping bags, money belts, and tobacco pouches. Goodrich used zippers in “Zipper boots.” By the 1930s zippers were so widely used in garments ranging from handbags to men’s trousers that “zipper” became a generic term applied to any toothed, slide fastener. This device consists of parallel rows of metal or nylon teeth on adjacent edges of an opening, interlocked by sliding tab. Teeth may be covered by fabric tape and almost invisible or made in various lengths to use on necklines, skirt plackets, coat and jacket fronts, or handbags and pockets. Large-sized zippers, originally used for upholstery and industrial uses, were adopted for decorative trim on clothing in mid-1960s and were called **industrial zippers**.

clot See FOOTWEAR.

cloth Synonym for TEXTILE FABRIC.

dothe 1. To put on garments. 2. To provide with clothing.

cloth embroidery See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES.

clothes Collective term for all items of apparel worn on the body by men, women, and children. *Der.* Anglo-Saxon, *dāthas*, plural of *clāth*, “doth.” Synonyms: *apparel, attire, dothing, costume, dress, garb, garment, raiment, vestments.*

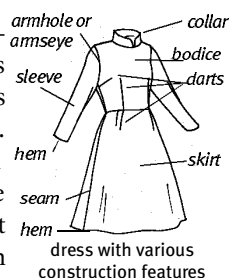
CLOTHING

CONSTRUCTION DETAILS

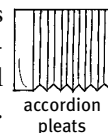
clothing construction The process of making a garment by hand or machine sewing or both. Mass production generally relies on machine processes while made-to-order cloth-

ing uses more hand sewing. See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES for specific stitches used.

details The individual components within the structure of a garment that are combined in order to create the final, functional garment.



accordion pleats Folds in fabrics that are named for their resemblance to the folds of the musical instrument called an accordion. Smaller at the top but larger at the bottom, the lower edge of the hem shows a zigzag pattern. An accordion-pleated skirt takes a full circle of fabric. First used in the late 1880s. Synonyms: *sunburst pleats* and *fan pleats*.



asymmetric hem Hem of uneven length—may be long in back and short in front or slanted diagonally from one side to the other. The latter has been popular since the late 1960s. All types of uneven hemlines were popular in the 1980s.



backing Layer of fabric placed underneath the outer fabric of a garment. Its function is generally to support the outer fabric.

barred buttonhole See CLOSURES: WORKED BUTTONHOLE.

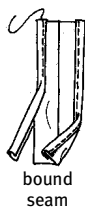
bias pleats Pressed-down pleats made in fabric cut on the diagonal, usually stitched down a few inches at top to make them hang better.

binding Narrow fabric strips used to cover seams or raw edges of clothing. May be cut on the BIAS or ON STRAIGHT GRAIN.

bound An adjective describing a raw edge of a garment or part of a garment that has been finished either with band of machine stitching, bias binding, or tape.

bound buttonhole See CLOSURES.

bound seam Edges of plain seam bound with bias binding (see CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS: BINDING). Used particularly on seams of unlined jackets and around necklines, armholes, and jackets in contrasting color for decoration.



bound seam

box pleat Pleat made by making two folds in fabric, the edges of which face in opposite directions. Sometimes box pleats may be stitched down for some distance before the fullness is released.



box pleats

broad-stitched seam See CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS: TOP-STITCHED SEAM.

buttonhole See CLOSURES.

cartridge pleats Small rounded pleats, like very large gathers. Used quite extensively for gathering skirts in the mid-1800s. *Der.* from their resemblance to cartridge loops on military belts.

casings Fabric stitched in such a way as to form a tunnel through which elastic, a cord, or a drawstring is drawn. Types of casings include (1) **fold-down casing**, formed by turning down and stitching an extension at the edge of a garment. (2) **applied casing**, formed by folding a separate strip of fabric, stitching it to form a tunnel, and then applying it to some part of a garment.

circular hem Hem put in a full circular or gored skirt. If narrow, hem is machine-stitched or hand-rolled. Deeper hems have fullness worked in with tiny DARTS or GATHERS or may have a FACING applied. (See CROSS REFERENCES under CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS).

clean-stitched seam Plain seam pressed open on wrong side of garment with the raw edges turned under and stitched so they will not ravel.



clean-stitched seam

cluster pleats Pressed or unpressed pleats arranged in groups. Usually consisting of a large BOX PLEAT with several small KNIFE PLEATS on either side. See under CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS.

corded seam Plain seam with cord inside bias binding inserted in seam before the seam is stitched so that covered cord appears as decoration along the seam. This technique was widely used in clothing construction in the early through the mid-19th c.



corded seam

crystal pleats Very fine, heat-set ridges usually used in sheer nylon or polyester fabrics. Also see CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS: MUSHROOM PLEAT.

dart Sewing term for V-shaped tuck used to make garment conform to the body. Used frequently at shoulders, waist, or in side seam under the arm.



darts diagram

double ruffle Strip of fabric stitched in the center and gathered to form a ruffle on either side of stitching.

double-stitched seam See CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS: TOP-STITCHED SEAM.

ease 1. *v.* The process of joining a slightly larger garment piece to a smaller garment piece by evenly distributing the fullness along the seam where the pieces are joined. 2. *n.* The fullness produced when garment pieces are eased.

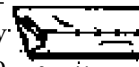


ease

envelope pleats Large INVERTED PLEAT (see under CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS) placed at the side seam of dress skirt and reveals a pocket underneath when one edge is pulled aside.

eyelet See in alphabetical list.

faced hem Use of another piece of fabric, usually lighter in weight and bias cut, sewed on at base of hem, turned up, and finished like a plain hem. Usually used when dress or pants are to be made longer or the garment is very flared.



faced hem

facing Fabric piece attached to the raw edge of some part of a garment in order to finish that edge. Facings are used in areas such as necklines, armholes of sleeveless dress, and openings at

the front or back. Hems may also be faced. The verb *to face* describes the act of applying a facing.

fan pleats See CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS: ACCORDION PLEAT.

feather boning See CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS: STAY #1.

fell seam See CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS: FLAT-FELLED SEAM.

flat felled seam Seam created by placing the undersides of garment pieces together and stitching a seam of about $\frac{3}{8}$ " wide that appears on the right sides. One edge of the seam is then cut off to $\frac{1}{8}$ " and the other edge folded over cut edge. Both are then pressed flat in the same direction and the folded edge is top-stitched. As a result, two rows of stitching appear on outside. This creates a very durable seam. Also called *fell seam*.

flat pleats See CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS: KNIFE PLEATS.

fluted hem Tiny hem finished with picot edge (see PICOT #2) in a sheer nylon fabric which is set in crystal pleats. The edge gives a serpentine effect winding outward and inward.

french seam Seam created by placing the undersides of garment pieces together and stitching a seam that appears on the right sides. This seam is trimmed, then the fabric is folded so that the outsides of the fabric pieces are together. A seam is then stitched that encases the previously stitched seam. This seam is mostly used on transparent and lightweight fabrics that ravel.

fused hem Hem created with special tape that when pressed with a hot iron melts and adheres to the fabric. Sometimes loosens when garment is washed or dry cleaned. Introduced in the 1960s.

fused seam Seam made in plastic or vinyl by heating edges to be joined. Also called *welded seam*.



facings at armhole, neck, and front closing



flat-felled seam



french seam

gathering Drawing up fullness along several threads in a row of stitching. Also see CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS: SHIRRING.



gathers

gauging See CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS: SHIRRING.

godet (go-day') Triangular piece, sometimes rounded at top and flaring at the base, set into a skirt or sleeve to give added fullness. See CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS: GORE and GUSSET.



godet

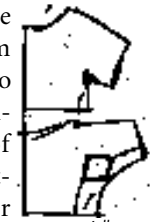
godet pleats (go-day') Pleats that hang in a series of rolls forming a gored skirt, popular in 1890s. Also called *pipe-organ pleats*.

gore 1. Skirt section, wider at hem than top, providing fullness and shaping to waist without using darts. A four-gore skirt has seams at sides, center front, and center back; six-gore skirt has side-front and side-back seams as well as side seams. There may be as many as twenty-four gores in a skirt. 2. In sewing, a triangular insert of fabric that creates fullness, greater width, or desired shape. Used in skirts and bell-bottom pants. Also used in gloves at wrist, to make a flared cuff and facilitate opening. Also called *godet*.



six-gored skirt

gusset 1. Diamond-shaped piece of fabric inserted under the arm of sleeve or in the crotch seam to permit greater movement. 2. Triangular piece used at sides of handbag, at sides of men's shirt-tails, and sides of shoes for wider opening.



gusset #1

handkerchief hem Hem that falls in points similar to when a handkerchief is held in the center and allowed to fall.

heading Small hem through which elastic is pulled.

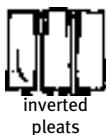
hem The lower edge of an item of clothing, such as a skirt or blouse, or of sleeves.



handkerchief hem

82 clothing construction details: inverted pleat

inverted pleat Pleat formed by bringing two folds to a center line and pressing them. Reverse side of several inverted pleats will look like box pleats.



kick pleats Single flat pleat or one KNIFE PLEAT (see under CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS) at the back or front of a narrow skirt to make walking easier.

kilt pleats Flat pleat covering half of next pleat, all folded in the same direction as in a Scottish kilt.

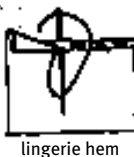
knife pleats Pressed in pleats, usually placed $\frac{1}{2}$ " to 1" apart. All pleats go in the same direction. Also called *flat* or *side pleats*.



lapped seam Simple seam used on interfacing and also in shoe and glove construction. One layer of material is placed on top of another and topstitched. Excess material is trimmed away.

lettuce edging Narrow-hemmed finish for edges of garments that creates the appearance of a curly lettuce leaf.

lingerie hem Rolled hem with overcast stitches at intervals forming minute puffs between stitches. Handmade hem popular in the 1920s and still used occasionally.



machine-made buttonhole See CLOSURES.

miter To finish a square corner with a diagonal seam.



mushroom pleats Very fine, heat-set pleats similar to CRYSTAL PLEATS (see under CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS). *Der.* From appearance of the inside cap of the mushroom.

nun's tucks Tucks, usually of 2" or more in width, placed around the hem of a dress or used on sleeves in a series of three, five, or seven.

open-welt seam See CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS: TUCKED SEAM.

overcast seam 1. Plain seam pressed open on wrong side and each raw edge finished by hand or machine overcast stitches to prevent

raveling. 2. Seam made on inside of garment with both raw edges overcast together either by hand or machine.



overlapped seam See CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS: LAP SEAM.

petal hem Hem that falls in rounded sections similar to petals of a flower.

picot hem Hem finished with a row of machine hemstitching—then cut apart—used on ruffles to reduce bulkiness. Popular in the 1920s. See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES: HEM-STITCH #2.

pinked Describes seams or other fabric areas that have been finished by trimming raw edges with a pinking shears, which makes saw-toothed edges to prevent raveling.



pin tucks See CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS: TUCKS.

pipel buttonhole See CLOSURES.

pipe organ pleats See CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS: GODET PLEAT.

pipel A folded piece of bias binding. Piping may be inserted between two layers of fabric before stitching to create a decorative effect as, for example, in piped seams. Piped seams are similar to corded seams but have a flat rather than a rounded edge.

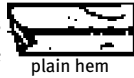
placket Word used since the 16th c. for slit at neck, side, front, back, or wrist in dress, blouse, pants, or skirt to facilitate taking garment on and off. Fastened in



early times by lacings, buttons, or hooks and eyes; since 1930s by zippers, and since 1970s by *Velcro*®. A **side placket** is an opening placed in side seam of a dress or blouse to facilitate putting on a fitted dress. It extends about 4" above and below waistline. Originally fastened with SNAPS (see under CLOSURES), later side plackets closed by a special type of zipper. Most dresses had this type of opening from 1930s to 1950s. Replaced by long back zippers extending from neckline to hips.

plain hem Hem folded up and hand-sewn. The edge of the hem may be finished to pre-

vent raveling by various means such as turning the hem edge under and machine stitching, pinking (see CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS: PINKED), or sewing tape to the edge by machine after which hand stitches are used to finish the hem.



plain hem

plain seam Simple seam stitched on wrong side of garment usually pressed open. Used on a fabric that will not ravel.

pleat/plait 1. *n.* Fold of fabric usually pressed flat but sometimes left unpressed. When used in a skirt, blouse, or dress, it is sometimes stitched down at the top of the garment to make it hang better. In polyester and nylon fabrics, pleats may be put in permanently with a heat-setting process. 2. *v.* To set in folds.

rolled hem Handmade hem used on sheer and delicate fabrics. First rolled between the fingers, then sewed with tiny stitches. Used for chiffon evening gowns of the 1920s and 1930s, and still used occasionally.



rolled hem

saddle-stitched seam See FOOTWEAR.

saw-toothed hem Faced hem made with pointed edges.

scalloped hem Faced hem made with rounded edges simulating a shell design.

seam The place at which two or more layers of textile material or leather are sewn together. A variety of stitches and techniques can be utilized in creating seams. See individual types of seams listed under CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS and GLOVES AND GLOVE CONSTRUCTIONS.

seam binding Narrow tape woven on the straight used at hem of garment to cover raw edge. Also stitched to seams on wrong side to prevent stretching. Sometimes used to bind cut edges of raveled seams.

shirring Three or more rows of *gathers* made by small running stitches in parallel lines. Used to produce fullness at tops of gloves, skirts, sleeves, and swimsuits. Also called *gauging*. May be made



shirring

by using a large stitch on the sewing machine and then pulling the bobbin thread to form gathers or by using elastic thread on the bobbin.

shoulder dart V-shaped dart, extending from mid-shoulder seam to bust, or from shoulder seam to shoulder blade in back.

side placket See CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS: PLACKET.

side pleats See CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS: KNIFE PLEATS.

slot seam Seam created by folding under the edge of each of two garment pieces, laying the edges facing each other over a tape or strip of fabric, and topstitching the folded edges through the underlying fabric. This technique is often used to create a contrast in color or fabric between the underlying fabric and the top garment fabric.



slot seam

stay 1. Strip of material, originally whalebone but now usually thin metal or plastic, placed behind or within seams or darts and used to stiffen such garments as corsets, bodices, collars, or belts. Light boning used particularly at hem of skirt to extend it is called **feather boning**. 2. Piece of fabric stitched under pleats or gathers to hold fullness in place.

strap seam Plain seam stitched with wrong sides together, thereby making the seam on the outside of the garment. The seam is pressed open. Bias tape, with the edges folded under, is laid over the open seam and topstitched into place.



strap seam

stud See CLOSURES.

sunburst pleats See CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS: ACCORDION PLEAT.

sunburst tucks Used in a series, these are darts that taper to nothing. May be arranged around the neckline of a dress, on the front of the blouse, or at the front of the waistline. Provide a decorative effect and reduce fullness without gathers. Also called *fan tucks*.

tailored buttonhole See CLOSURES: WORKED BUTTONHOLE.

topstitching Stitching visible from the outer or "top" side of a garment that consists of one

or more rows of machine stitching made through all layers of fabric.

topstitched seam Plain seam pressed open and stitched on either side of seam on right side of garment or pressed to one side and stitched on reverse side. Also called *double-stitched seam* or, when double rows of stitching are placed on either side of the seam, *broad-stitched seam*.



tuck A means of controlling fullness in a garment in which part of the garment piece is made smaller by folding the fabric and stitching a line parallel to the fold. At the place where the tuck ends, fullness is released. Often tucks are arranged in a series and designated by width (e.g., 1", ½", ¼", or **pin tucks**; the latter are only wide enough for a row of stitching).

tucked seam Seam finished with tucks stitched about ¼" to 1" from either side of seam and pressed to meet over seam. Also called *open-welt seam*.

umbrella pleats Similar to **ACCORDION PLEATS** (see under **CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS**) but larger, like the folds of an umbrella.

venetian-blind pleats A pleat formed by a wide-stitched tuck made in the fabric. Each tuck slightly overlaps the previous one in the fashion of Venetian blind slats.

Watteau pleats Box pleats hanging free from back shoulder yoke to hem of dress or dressing gown. *Der.* From the name of an 18th-c. French painter who often depicted women wearing dresses with this style pleat. The term was coined in the 19th c. Shown at **WATTEAU BACK**.

welded seam See **CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS: FUSED SEAM**.

welt seam Plain seam stitched on underside of the fabric, one edge is trimmed, then both edges are pressed in same direction with the narrower edge under the wider. Finally the seam is topstitched at a point close enough to the seam to catch wider edge. This is a very durable seam finish and



may also be used for decorative effects if the color of the top stitching contrasts with the fabric.

worked buttonhole See **CLOSURES**.

clothing industry See **APPAREL INDUSTRY**.

clouded cane See **CANE**.

clout-shoen See **FOOTWEAR: CLOT**.

cloverleaf lapel See **NECKLINES AND COLLARS: LAPEL**.

clown suit Popular fancy dress costume for children or adults consisting of a jumpsuit with full pant legs with ruffles at cuffs and ankles. A large unstarched **RUFF** (see **NECKLINES AND COLLARS**) is worn at the neckline. Made of two colors, divided down center front and back, and trimmed with pompons. Worn with tall tapered **DUNCE'S CAP** (see **HEADWEAR**).

club bow tie See **TIES**.

club wig See **WIGS AND HAIRPIECES**.

Cluny lace See **LACES**.

cluster curls See **HAIRSTYLES**.

cluster earring See **JEWELRY**.

cluster pleats See **CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS**.

cluster ring See **JEWELRY**.

clutch coat See **COATS AND JACKETS**.

clutch purse/bag See **HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES**.

CMT See **CUT, MAKE AND TRIM**.

coachman's coat See **COATS AND JACKETS**.

coal-scuttle bonnet See **HEADWEAR**.

coat-dress Dress fastened down front from neck to hem, like a coat, in single- or double-breasted style, either belted or unbelted. A classic since the 1930s.

coated fabrics † Fabrics sometimes made non-porous and water repellent through coating with various substances such as lacquer, varnish, pyroxlin, rubber, polyethylene, or plastic resin.

coatee See **COATS AND JACKETS**.

coat jumper See **JUMPERS**.

coat of mail See **ARMOR: HAUBERK**.

coat set See **COATS AND JACKETS**.

coat shirt See **SHIRTS**.

coats See **CLOSURES: BREASTS**.

COATS AND JACKETS

coat Sleeved outerwear that ranges from hip-length to full-length, it is designed to be worn over other clothing either for warmth or as a decorative element of the costume. Although a coat with set-in sleeves was worn in ancient Persia, MANTLES and CAPES (see under CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS) were more generally worn as the outermost garment until the end of the 18th c. when the REDINGOTE and PELISSE were introduced (see under COATS AND JACKETS). *Der.* From “cloak” in use by mid-19th c., and not changed to “coat” until the late 19th c.

jacket For men: used in English to describe a garment, often sleeveless, that was worn over a DOUBLET in France and England in 15th c. and into the early 17th c. It was also called a *jerkin*. In 18th c. worn by country people, laborers, seafarers, and apprentices, thus becoming a mark of social inferiority. In mid-19th c. accepted by gentlemen, replacing the suit coat for some occasions. For women: In the 17th c. the jacket was a type of BODICE that was more loosely fitted than more formal wear and was also called either a doublet or waistcoat. In the 19th c., when women adopted dresses made up of separate bodices and skirts, the separate bodice was referred to as a JACKET BODICE (see in alphabetical listing), whereas the term “jacket” alone as used today (see #1 below) was applied to separate garments such as the ZOUAVE JACKET (see COATS AND JACKETS). In the 20th c., many styles, for both formal and informal occasions, were introduced for both men and women. Present-day usage defines jackets as follows: **1.** An item of apparel, usually shorter than hip-length, designed to be worn over other clothing either indoors or outdoors. Some are made with double-breasted or single-breasted closings; others have no closing, and some are closed with a zipper. **2.** Part of a suit that covers the upper part of the body—a *suit jacket*. *Der.* Old French, *jackquette*, the diminutive of *jacque*, a coat.

admiral coat Double-breasted REEFER-style coat (see under COATS AND JACKETS), frequently with gold buttons. *Der.* Adapted from coats worn by U.S. Navy officers.

Afghanistan jacket Jacket of lambskin, tanned with hair left on, made with leather side out, giving a shaggy border around edge, sometimes embroidered on the smooth side. Popular in late 1960s as part of trend toward ethnic clothes.

Albert driving cape Not a true cape, but a single- or double-breasted, loose, CHESTERFIELD-style coat (see under COATS AND JACKETS) of 1860 usually made with no back seam. Also called *driving sac*.

Albert jacket Man's single-breasted jacket of 1848. It was made with or without waistline seam side pleats, and had no breast pocket.

Albert overcoat Man's loose-fitting midcalf overcoat with fly front, small shoulder cape, flapped hip pockets, long back vent, and vertical slit breast pockets; worn in 1877.

Albert riding coat High-but toned single-breasted man's coat of 1841 with front cut away in slanted style. Made with broad collar, narrow lapels, and hip pockets.

Albert top frock Men's heavy overcoat styled like a FROCK COAT (see under COATS AND JACKETS), made with wide velvet collar, flap pockets, wide cuffs, and lapels; worn from 1860s to 1900.

A-line coat Coat made close and narrow at the shoulders, flaring gently from under arms to hem; shaped like letter **A**, made in single- or double-breasted style with or without a collar. Introduced in 1955 by Paris designer Christian Dior.

all-weather coat Waterproofed or water-repellent coat sometimes made with zip-in lining to adapt to various temperatures.

all-weather raincoat Raincoat that can be worn year-round as it is made with a zip-out lining, usually of acrylic pile.

almain coat/jacket (al'man) Jacket worn by men over DOUBLET in second half of 15th and early 16th c. Made close fitting with

short, flared skirt and long hanging sleeves, and slashed at front seams.

Alpine jacket 1. Waist-length jacket worn with LEDERHOSEN (see under SHORTS) as part of a Tyrolean mountain climber's costume. 2. Englishman's jacket similar to a NORFOLK JACKET (see under COATS AND JACKETS), made double-breasted with vertical flap pockets and pleat down center back. Worn buttoned to neck, often without a vest, in 1876.

American coat British term for man's single-breasted full-length coat, usually black, made with narrow lapels, wide collar, and full skirt; worn in 1829.

angle-fronted coat Variation of man's MORNING COAT (see under COATS AND JACKETS), cut away diagonally on each side to reveal triangles of waistcoat; worn from 1870 to 1880. Also called *university coat*.

anorak (an'-nah-rack) Hip-length jacket made of water-repellent fabric, sometimes lined with fur, which has a zip-front and drawstring hem and is worn for winter sports. Introduced in World War II for pilots. *Der.* Eskimo word for a hooded waist-length jacket of seal-skin or printed cotton worn for warmth by Greenland Eskimos.



anorak

Armenian mantle Loose-fitting pelisse (see under COATS AND JACKETS) without a cape, enriched with PASSEMENTERIE made of braid, worn by women in 1847

ascot jacket Loose-fitting man's jacket with rounded hems in front and matching fabric belt pulling in the waistline, worn in 1876.

automobile coat See COATS AND JACKETS: DUSTER.

balmacaan (bal-ma-kan) Raglan-sleeved, loose-fitting style coat that buttons up the front to the neck and has a small,



balmacaan

turned-down collar. Frequently made of tweed or water-repellent fabric. *Der.* Named after Balmacaan, Invernesshire, Scotland.

Balmoral jacket 1. Woman's jacket of 1867 that buttoned to neck with front and back points below waist. 2. Woman's belted double-breasted semi-fitted jacket with lapels and small gauntlet cuffed sleeves, similar to coat of riding habit, worn c. 1870.

barn coat See COATS AND JACKETS: FIELD COAT.

barouche coat (bar-roosh) Woman's tight-fitting three-quarter-length outdoor coat with full sleeves, fastened in front with gold barrel-shaped snaps and an elastic-type belt with buckle, worn in 1809.

baseball jacket Waist-length zippered or snap-closed jacket with ribbed cuffs and waist styled after those worn by Major League and Little League baseball



baseball or varsity jacket

players. While those used in professional and amateur sports are made in team colors with team name on the front and player's number on the back, those for general wear are made in a wide variety of colors and fabrics and may or may not have team logos or other decorations. Also called *varsity jacket*.

base coat Man's jacket or *jerkin* with short sleeves, square neckline, and skirts, or BASES, hanging in tubular unpressed pleats to just above the knees; worn from 1490 to 1540.

basquine (bas-keen') 1. Woman's coat with pagoda sleeves, fringed trimming, and long extension below the waistline, worn in 1857. 2. Outdoor jacket worn in 1860s. Also spelled *basquin*, *basquine*.

Battenberg jacket Woman's loose-fitting outdoor jacket with large buttons and a turned-down collar worn in 1880s.

battle jacket Waist-length Army jacket worn in World War II, having two breast pockets, fitted waistband, zippered fly-closing, and



battle jacket

turn-down collar with revers. Also called *Eisenhower jacket* after Allied forces Commander-in-Chief General Dwight D. Eisenhower, who wore this style.

beach coat See ACTIVEWEAR: BEACH ROBE.

Beaufort coat Man's suit jacket of 1880s with single-breasted, four-button closing, narrow straight sleeves, and seams often double-stitched. Also called *jumper coat*.

beer jacket Short, boxy cotton jacket with patch pockets and brass buttons originally worn by upper classmen at Princeton University in 1930s, and copied by other students.

bellboy/bellhop jacket Waist-length jacket with standing collar, two rows of brass buttons on front in V-style, frequently connected with gold braid. Originally worn by messenger boys, pages, and bellboys at hotels. Now used mainly for band uniforms and occasionally adapted for men's, women's, and children's wear.

bench coat See COATS AND JACKETS: BENCH-WARMER JACKET.

benchwarmer jacket Hooded knee-length jacket slipped over head and zipped at neck. Copied for young people from jackets worn by football players waiting on the bench. Also called *bench coat*.

benjamin Overcoat, generally white, worn by working men in the 19th c. Also called *benny* or *lily benjamin*.

big coat Long, full, sometimes-ankle-length voluminous coat with long full sleeves. Worn belted, unbelted, or with a belt in the back to confine the fullness.

bike jacket Waist-length sport jacket. Styling varies but is often similar to a WINDBREAKER or BATTLE JACKET (see under COATS AND JACKETS).

bi-swing Suit or sport jacket with set-in belt in back and deep pleats extending upward to each shoulder to give freedom of movement. Has single-breasted closing and conventional notched collar with lapels. Popular in the 1930s for men and women.

blade jacket Man's business jacket of the 1930s made with extra fullness at upper arm and back, or shoulder blades, giving broad-shouldered look and freedom of movement.

blazer Sport jacket in a solid color or striped. Originally single breasted, and with patch pockets, now made double-breasted as well and with varying types of pockets. Generally worn with trousers or skirt of contrasting color. *Der.* Earliest uses of this term seem to have been for bright (blazing) red jackets worn for sports.



blazer

blouse coat Coat with V-shaped neckline, *dolman* or *kimono* sleeves, and single-button closing at waistline; frequently made with slightly flounced skirt and lavish, high fur collar; popular in the 1920s.

blouson jacket (blue'-zohn) Jacket with a bloused effect at a normal or low waistline, either gathered into knitted waistband or pulled in by drawstring. *Der.* French, "blouse."

bobtailed coat Short-tailed man's coat with narrow revers (see NECKLINES AND COLLARS) worn at end of 18th and early 19th c.

body coat In 19th-c. men's tailoring, used to distinguish a suit coat from an outdoor coat or overcoat.

bolero Waist-length or above-the-waist jacket, usually collarless and often sleeveless, with rounded front, and no fastenings. Copied from the Spanish bullfighter's embroidered jacket and worn by women since late 19th c. *Der.* From name of a Spanish dance and also music for the dance.



bolero

bomber jacket See COATS AND JACKETS: FLIGHT JACKET.

box coat 1. Woman's straight coat with wide shoulders, popular in late 1920s and 1930s. Also see COATS AND JACKETS: CARRICK.
2. Heavy, warm overcoat with single or multiple shoulder capes worn throughout 19th c. particularly by coachmen and travelers riding outside coach on the "box." Also called *driving coat* and *curricle coat* (kur'-eh-kul).
3. Hip-length woman's double-breasted jacket styled like a REEFER (see COATS AND JACKETS), worn in early 1890s.
4. Unfitted

88 coats and jackets: box jacket

large sleeved jacket coming to below waistline, styled with standing collar and side closing. Worn in mid-1890s. **5.** See COATS AND JACKETS: EMPIRE JACKET #2. **6.** Three-quarter-length unfitted coat of early 1900s, made with shawl collar, unfastened in front. Sometimes trimmed lavishly with braid. **7.** Double-breasted girl's coat sometimes made with shawl collar, or an extra cape, worn in early 20th c.

box jacket Any straight unfitted jacket, waist-length or longer.

boy coat Double-breasted coat with long, notched collar and set-in sleeves.

Brandenburg/Brandenbourg/Brandenburgh

Man's long, loose winter coat made in military style with frog closings, worn in last quarter of 17th c. *Der.* Named for braid-trimmed uniforms worn by Brandenburg troops of Prussia during the Napoleonic War who fought for a state located in the eastern part of Germany.

Breton jacket (bret-ohn') Fitted hip-length woman's jacket buttoned on either side to a front panel, with tailored collar and lavishly trimmed with wide braid. Frequently shorter in center back. In the late 1870s, when worn with matching skirt, called a *Breton costume*.

British warm British army or navy officers' heavy double-breasted overcoat, knee-length or shorter, copied for civilian wear in 1950s and 1960s.

Bronx jacket See COATS AND JACKETS: PERFECTO JACKET.

bucksain Man's padded overcoat with wide sleeves, worn in 1850s.

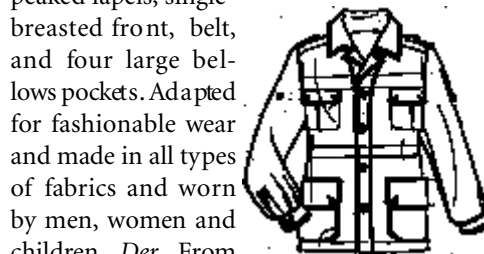
buckskin jacket Western-style jacket of sueded DOESKIN OR SHEEPSKIN (see LEATHERS) trimmed with long fringe. A standard style in the American West from colonial days, it was adapted for citywear in the late 1960s.

buff coat Man's leather jacket made of ox or buffalo hides. Sometimes with shoulder wings and sleeves of fabric, sometimes sleeveless. Worn in 16th and 17th c. Originally a military garment worn during civil wars in England, adopted by civilians and American Colonists. Also called *buff jerkin* or *leather jerkin*.

bulletproof jacket Any jacket that is constructed with strong, bullet-resistant fiber such as Kevlar® aramid. One example is a lightweight jacket with zipper front and three bulletproof panels—two in front and one in back—that slip into pockets in the lining.

Burberry® Trademark of Burberry's International, Ltd., London, for an expensive unisex trenchcoat-type raincoat. Made in lightweight polyester and cotton fabric with an optional plaid zip-out lining. Skirts, scarves, and umbrellas are made to match the lining. Details include handstitching on collar, handmade buttonholes, and D-rings on belt for holding objects. First used by British officers in 1914. Also see alphabetical listing.

bush jacket/bush coat Jacket originally worn in Africa on hunting expeditions, where it was made of khaki-colored cotton with peaked lapels, single-breasted front, belt,



bush jacket or safari jacket

and four large bellows pockets. Adapted for fashionable wear and made in all types of fabrics and worn by men, women and children. *Der.* From clothes worn on hunting trip into the African bush country. Also called *bush coat* or *safari jacket*, which is similar in all respects to the bush jacket, but called by this name in the mid- and late 1960s when introduced as a fashion item for women by Dior, the French couturier. Newer versions in 1980s styled without belt, sometimes with epaulets. *Der.* From name of African hunting trip, *safari*, for which similar style jacket is worn.

caban Man's loose outdoor garment of the 1840s that had wide, bell-like sleeves, sometimes had a small cape at the shoulders, and a hood. Also known as *templar cloak*.

Camargo (ka-mar'-go) A woman's jacket with draped fullness, pannier-style, around hips worn over waistcoat or vest in late 1870s. *Der.* After Marie Ann de Cupis Camargo (1710–1770), celebrated dancer.

Cambridge coat Three-button, single- or double-breasted man's suit coat of 1870, made with three seams in back and a center vent.

Cambridge paletot (pal-ah-tow' or pal-tow') Man's knee-length overcoat of mid-1850s cut with wide cape collar, large turned-back cuffs, and wide lapels extending almost to hem.

campaign coat Originally a long military overcoat worn by the rank and file from about 1667, and later adopted by men for civilian wear in late 17th c.

canadienne (ka-nah'-dee-en) Woman's hip-length, double-breasted, belted coat designed in Paris during the 1940s, copied from coats worn by Canadian soldiers.

cape coat **1.** Coat with sleeves and an attached or separate cape. **2.** Combination of cape and coat with the back falling like a cape, the front having sleeves and looking like a coat. Also see COATS AND JACKETS: DOLMAN.

capote/capot (kah-pot) **1.** Man's loose coat with turn-down collar and cuffs worn in 18th c. **2.** Hooded coat or cloak worn from Middle Ages on.

caprice (ka-preece) Loose short sleeveless woman's evening jacket of mid-19th c. that tapered to rounded point below the waist in back.

caraco (kar'-a-ko) **1.** Fitted hip-length suit jacket with peplum made by French designer Yves Saint Laurent in 1969, said to derive from jackets depicted in Toulouse-Lautrec paintings. **2.** Thigh-length fitted jacket, flaring below waist, made with no waistline seams and popular for women from late 18th through 19th c. Also called *caraco corsage*.

car coat Sport or utility coat made hip- to three-quarter length, which is comfortable for driving a car. First became popular with the station-wagon set in suburbia in 1950s and 1960s and has become a classic style since then. Some of the styles in which car coats have been made include BENCHWARMER, DUFFEL COAT, RANCH COAT, MACKINAW JACKET, STADIUM COAT, TOGGLE COAT. See these under COATS AND JACKETS.

cardigan coat/cardigan jacket Collarless coat or jacket made with plain round neckline and

buttoned down center front and which may have binding around the neckline and down the front. *Der.* Named for 7th Earl of Cardigan, who needed an extra layer of warmth for his uniform during the Crimean War, 1854.

careless Man's loose-fitting caped overcoat with spread collar and no seams at waistline, worn in 1830s.

carmagnole (car'-man-yole) Jacket or short-skirted coat with wide collar, lapels, and rows of metal buttons. Worn with black pantaloons and red LIBERTY CAP (See HEADWEAR) by French Revolutionaries in 1792 and 1793.

carrick Man's or woman's full-length duster worn from 1877 on. Styled like a box coat with three capes and similar to an ulster (see under COATS AND JACKETS: ULSTER #1 AND #2).

casaque (ka-sak') **1.** Fitted jacket buttoned down the front, worn by women from mid-1850s to mid-1870s. Early types had extensions of the bodice (basques) to the hips or sometimes longer; later types had skirts draped in POLONAISE style. **2.** French term for jacket worn by jockeys, usually made in bright colors of their respective stables. **3.** Girl's coat cut on princess lines worn in 1860s. **4.** See COATS AND JACKETS: CASSOCK #1.

casawek (kasa'-wek) Woman's short, quilted outdoor mantle made with close-fitting velvet or silk collar and sleeves. Frequently trimmed with fur, velvet, or lace. Worn from mid-1830s to mid-1850s. Also see COATS AND JACKETS: POLKA AND VARENS.

casentino (ca-zen-tee-no) Red overcoat with a green lining worn by coachmen in Casentino, a section of Italy. Later adapted for winter sportswear.

cassock **1.** Long loose overcoat with a cape collar. Worn from late 16th through 17th c. by men and women for hunting, riding, and by foot soldiers. Also called a *casaque* (kasak'). **2.** See CLERICAL DRESS.

Charlie Chaplin coat Ankle-length, full-shouldered, oversized coat with baggy sleeves ending in wide-buttoned cuffs and huge patch pockets. Introduced by Claude Montana, French couturier, in spring collection of 1985.

90 coats and jackets: chasseur jacket

Der. Named after Charlie Chaplin, an early silent-film comedian.

chasseur jacket Fitted, hip-length, military-inspired women's jacket of 1880s made with standing military collar, slashings at hem, and elaborately trimmed with braid and BRANDENBURGS (see CLOSURES: FROGS).

chesterfield coat Semi-fitted, straight-cut classic man's or woman's overcoat in single- or double-breasted style, with black velvet collar. Single-breasted style usually has a fly-front closing. Originally an overcoat introduced in 1840s for men. Popular in late 1920s through 1940 and worn at intervals since. *Der.* Named after the 6th Earl of Chesterfield, a fashion leader in 1830s and 1840s.



chesterfield coat

Chinese jacket See COATS AND JACKETS: COOLIE COAT.

chubby Woman's straight-cut waist- to hip-length jacket of long-haired fur, made collarless, with straight sleeves. Popular in late 1930s and revived in early 1970s.

claw-hammer coat Colloquial name for the SWALLOW-TAILED COAT (see under COATS AND JACKETS) named for shape of coat-tails with ends cut straight across resembling claws of a hammer.

close coat Term used in 18th and 19th c. for a buttoned coat.

clutch coat Woman's coat with no fasteners in front worn open or held clutched together. Originally introduced in the mid-1920s as a low-waisted evening wrap with bagpipe sleeves and large fur collar and also for day wear. Revived periodically.

coachman's coat Double-breasted coat with large, wide lapels, fitted waistline, and flared skirt. Frequently has a



clutch coat

cape collar and brass buttons. Copied from English coachmen's coats of 19th c.

coatee Short close-fitting coat with short skirt, flaps, or coattails. Fashionable in mid-18th c. and also in 1860s.

coats See CLOSURES: BREASTS.

coat set Child's coat made with matching hat, or matching pants, sold together since 1940s.

coattail Portion of coat below the back waistline, especially the long back portions of a SWALLOW-TAILED COAT or a CUTAWAY (see under COATS AND JACKETS).

cocoon Wrap coat with very large shoulders, deep cuffed batwing sleeves, and standing collar that may be rolled down. Envelops the figure, tapering to the hem, like a cocoon. Used as a *rain or shine coat*. Originally introduced by Yves Saint Laurent in spring 1984 as an evening coat in velvet, it reached to thigh in back and tapered in cutaway fashion in the front.

Codrington Man's loose-fitting single or double-breasted overcoat resembling a CHESTERFIELD (see under COATS AND JACKETS) worn in 1840s. *Der.* After Sir Edward Codrington, British admiral, who led fleet to victory at Navarino in 1827.

coin de feu (kwan' de fuh') Short coat with high neck and wide sleeves made of silk, velvet, or cashmere usually worn indoors over a home dress in mid-19th c.

combing jacket Woman's loose jacket, usually waist-length, worn in the bedroom when brushing hair or applying makeup, in late 19th and early 20th c.

coolie coat Short boxy coat reaching slightly below waist with standing collar, KIMONO SLEEVES (see SHOULDERS AND SLEEVES) and FROG FASTENERS (see CLOSURES). Worn by Chinese workmen and frequently copied as beach or lingerie coat. *Der.* Chinese, *kuli*, "unskilled workman."

coureur (koo-er') Tight-fitting CARACO jacket (see COATS AND JACKETS: CARACO #2),



coachman's coat, 1775

with short PEPLUM OR BASQUES worn by women during French Revolution.

C.P.O. See SHIRTS.

Cubavera jacket White cotton sport jacket with four patch pockets similar to BEER JACKET (see under COATS AND JACKETS). Worn with lightweight slacks for sportswear by men from 1940 to 1950.

curricle coat (kur'-eh-kul) **1.** Woman's fitted full-length coat with lapels worn in early 19th c. Cut away in front from chest to waist, sloping to the back; sometimes called *gig coat*. **2.** Synonym for *box coat* that was used in the mid-19th c. See COATS AND JACKETS: BOX COAT #2.

cutaway 19th c. man's coat style that was known by a number

of different names throughout the century. It originated as a riding coat, worn from 1825 to 1870s and was made with skirt slanting from waist to thigh in back that was made by cutting away the front of a FROCK COAT (see under COATS AND JACKETS) instead of folding the skirts back for horseback riding. From the riding coat the Newmark or Newmarket coat evolved. This name, used c. 1838 and after, also has a connection to riding, as New Market, England, was a horse racing center. This was a long-tail coat made single- or double-breasted with front skirts cut away and rounded, often with flap pockets and cuffed sleeves. By the 1850s, this basic style was known as a "cutaway" and worn for more formal occasions. It was usually a black, one-button jacket with peaked lapels and skirt cut away from the waist in front, tapering to knees in back, in a slanting line. It had a back vent topped by two buttons and was worn with a waistcoat and striped trousers in daytime. By the 1870s the same style was more likely to be called a morning coat.



cutaway coat c. 1895

cutaway frock Man's suit coat almost knee-length—similar to a FROCK COAT (see under

COATS AND JACKETS)—and cut away from waistline to each side seam in rounded curve. Worn in 1890s and early 1900s. As the dress frock coat worn in 1870s and 1880s, this coat was double-breasted and exposed the shirt in front.

cutaway sack Man's loose-fitting suit jacket reaching to hips cut away in rounded lines in front to side seams. Worn in 1890s and early 1900s.

cycle jacket See COATS AND JACKETS: MOTOR-CYCLE JACKET.

deck jacket Short hooded water-repellent jacket, sometimes made with nylon pile lining, which closes with zipper and has attached ribbed, knitted trim at wrists and neck. Worn onboard sailboats and other craft.

denim jacket Any jacket made of blue denim fabric.

dinner jacket **1.** Man's white semiformal jacket worn in summer. **2.** See COATS AND JACKETS: TUXEDO.

Directoire coat (dir-eck'-twa) Woman's coat having ankle-length skirt in back and coming only to waistline in front, worn in late 1880s.

Directoire jacket (dir-eck'-twa) Woman's waist-length jacket of late 1880s. Similar to DIRECTOIRE COAT (see under COATS AND JACKETS), worn as top of a daytime dress.

dirndl coat (durn'-dul) Woman's coat cut with fitted torso, and skirt gathered at a low waistline, popular in the mid-1960s. *Der.* From gathered skirt and fitted bodice of the Tyrolean peasant dress called a *dirndl*.

dolman (dolé'-man) Woman's short mantle or full-length wrap that gives the appearance of a cape from the back, but is sleeved in front. Worn from 1870s through the 1880s, revived in early 20th c., and returns to current fashion frequently in coat collections. The **peplum dolman**, a variation with long points hanging at sides, was worn by women in the early 1870s. A crocheted dolman that fastened at neck with large bow



dolman c. 1882

92 coats and jackets: d'Orsay coat

of ribbon worn in the 1890s was called a *do lmanette*.

d'Orsay coat Man's overcoat of late 1830s—similar to a *PILOT COAT* (see under *COATS AND JACKETS*), but fitted at waist with darts. Made with a small collar, slashed or flapped pockets, plain sleeves trimmed with three or four buttons, and no pleats or hip buttons in the back. *Der.* Named for Compte d'Orsay, a 19th-c. arbiter of fashion.

d'Orsay habit-coat Fitted, man-tailored, three-quarter-length coat for women, somewhat resembling man's *CUTAWAY* (see under *COATS AND JACKETS*) style, made double-breasted with large *REVERS* (see *NECKLINES AND COLLARS*). Introduced in early 1880s.

doublet See in alphabetical listing.

douillette (do-yeh') Woman's winter coat worn from 1818 to 1830s. Over this time, the style changed with the current fashions, the earlier form being a quilted *PELISSE* (see under *COATS AND JACKETS*) and the later style consisting of a coat of cashmere, merino wool, or figured satin with a *pelérine* (a short cape) and having very large sleeves. Also spelled *donnilette*.

down jacket **1.** Usually a zippered jacket with long sleeves, knitted cuffs and waistband, interlined with *DOWN* quilted to the outer fabric and lining. Worn for warmth and popular for everyday use and sportswear in the 1970s and after. **2.** A similar jacket with zip-off sleeves can also be worn as a vest.

dress coat See *COATS AND JACKETS: SWALLOW-TAILED COAT*.

dress frock coat See *COATS AND JACKETS: CUTAWAY FROCK COAT*.

dressmaker coat A woman's coat designed with softer lines and more details than the average coat. May have a waistline and unusual details, e.g., tucks or pleats. *Der.* Styled more like a dress.

driving coat See *COATS AND JACKETS: BOX COAT #2*.



dressmaker coat

driving sac See *COATS AND JACKETS: ALBERT DRIVING CAPE*.

Du Barry mantle Dolman-style (see *COATS AND JACKETS: DOLMAN*) wrap of early 1880s with smocked yoke front and back, fur collar, and large full cuffs. Lavishly trimmed with ribbon bows and streamers at neck, below yoke, sleeves, and at center back. *Der.* Named for Comtesse Du Barry, mistress of King Louis XV of France.

duck-hunter Striped linen jacket worn by English waiters about 1840s.

duffel coat Car coat or a shorter-length coat fastened with toggles rather than buttons, introduced during World War II, and worn by men in British navy. In 1950s it was adopted as a sport coat. *Der.* From



duffel coat or toggle coat

the original fabric used—a heavy napped wool originally made in Duffel, Belgium. Same as *toggle coat* although sometimes toggle coats are made with a hood.

duo-length coat See *COATS AND JACKETS: ZIP-OFF COAT*.

duster **1.** Tan or brown lightweight full-length coat worn when riding in an automobile in early 20th c. to protect clothing from dust. Worn with *AUTOMOBILE VEIL*. See *HEADWEAR*. **2.** Big-shouldered, big-sleeved, big-pocketed classic coat with smocked back, treated for water repellency and introduced in 1984. **3.** Lightweight clutch coat with full swing at



duster 1905

hem and small rolled collar usually made in black bengaline or faille worn in the 1950s. **4.** Fitted coat with long skirt slashed up back to waist worn when riding horseback. Has buttons and buttonholes for closing the slashed skirt. **5.** See *SLEEPWEAR AND LOUNGEWEAR: DUSTER*. **6.** Man's summer overcoat of 1870s.

Dutch coat see COATS AND JACKETS: MUFF'S CLOAK

Edwardian coat Man's knee-length, usually double-breasted and black, topcoat or overcoat with large high-rolled, deep-notched collar, nipped-in waistline, and deep vent in back. Worn with a high silk hat and a cane in Edwardian period, 1901–1910. Versions of this style were revived in the 1960s. *Der.* Inspired by coats of Edwardian era in England.

Edwardian jacket Fitted jacket made with some flare at back and sides and vents at sides or center back. Styled with double- or single-breasted closing and NAPOLEON OR REGENCY COLLAR. (See NECKLINES AND COLLARS.) Introduced in the 1960s, it was similar in cut to jackets of the Edwardian period. *Der.* After Edward VII, King of England, 1901–1910.



Edwardian jacket
c. 1967

Eisenhower jacket See COATS AND JACKETS: BATTLE JACKET.

Empire coat (em'-pire or ohm-peer) Woman's three-quarter to full-length coat of early 1900s worn for traveling or evening wear. Made with a full skirt of large unpressed pleats attached to a high waistline. Bodice is cut somewhat like an ETON JACKET (see under COATS AND JACKETS) with large lapels and a standing MEDICI COLLAR (see NECKLINES AND COLLARS).

Empire jacket (em'-pire or ohm-peer) **1.** Jacket name coined by Women's Wear Daily for a jacket designed by Karl Lagerfeld in 1992 that was banded under the bosom. **2.** Square-yoked woman's jacket of mid-1890s made with MEDICI COLLAR (see NECKLINES AND COLLARS), large box pleats in front and back, and large balloon sleeves. Also called a *box coat*.

English coat **1.** Woman's double-breasted three-quarter-length jacket of 1890s made somewhat like a PEA JACKET (see under COATS AND JACKETS) with lapels and flapped pockets. **2.** Full-length coat of 1890s sometimes made with elbow-length cape.

English walking jacket Woman's jacket of mid-1870s made in single-breasted style with lapels. Unfitted in front but fitted at waistline in back flaring to form a PEPLUM. Sleeves with large turned-back cuffs.

English wrap See COATS AND JACKETS: PALETOT.

Eton jacket Straight-cut jacket with collar and wide lapels worn unbuttoned or with only top button closed, reaching to waist or a little below. Adapted from jackets worn by underclassmen



Eton jacket c. 1896

at Eton preparatory school in England until 1967, popular for women in early 1890s, revived periodically, and a perennial style for small boys. Also see ETON SUIT.

Eton jacket bodice Woman's waist-length jacket similar to boy's ETON JACKET (see under COATS AND JACKETS) worn open in front over a waistcoat in 1889. In the late 1890s, the front was trimmed with braid and frogs and rounded at waistline.

Eugénie paletot (yoo-je'-nee) **1.** Tailored three-quarter-length woman's coat of 1860s made in unfitted double-breasted style with notched collar and bell sleeves having false cuffs. The sides of cuffs and rounded patch pockets were decorated with buttons. **2.** Shorter length sack-type jacket, collarless or with a small collar, closing at neck with one button. *Der.* Named for Eugénie, Empress of France (1853–71).

evening wrap Any coat of fabric or fur designed to be worn primarily for formal occasions. It may be a coat designed to match or contrast with an evening dress. Very popular in the 1920s in clutch style. In 1930s, popular in black velvet in a full length with leg-of-mutton sleeves and in hip-length with batwing sleeves.

fake fur coat See COATS AND JACKETS: FUR FABRIC COAT.

fearnothing jacket Man's jacket similar to a waistcoat with sleeves worn by sailors, sportsmen, laborers, and apprentices in the 18th

94 coats and jackets: fencing jacket

and early 19th c. Made of heavy woolen fabric called **fearnaught**.

fencing jacket Close-fitting, waist-length jacket, usually padded or quilted, made with high-standing collar and fastened diagonally to right side with a red heart embroidered on left chest. Worn for sport of fencing and sometimes copied for general wear.

field coat Hip-length coat usually made of cotton canvas that buttons down the front. Generally has large pockets on either side of the front near the hem. Often made with corduroy or leather collar in contrasting color. **Barn coat** is similar in style, but made in various types of materials, including suede.

Figaro jacket Variation of the **ZOUAVE** or **BOLERO JACKET** (see under **COATS AND JACKETS**), with or without shoulder epaulets, worn by women in 1860s and again in 1890s.

fishing parka Knee-length slip-on jacket styled with attached hood and one large **KANGAROO POCKET** (see **POCKETS**) across the chest. Made of waterproof fabric and worn for fishing in inclement weather.

flight jacket Waist-length jacket, sometimes made of leather. First worn as part of their uniform by U.S. Army Air Corps pilots in World War II, then adapted for sportswear in 1960s. In early



flight or bomber jacket

1980s and after made in a variety of styles, mainly of nylon, with standing collar, ribbed or elastic waistband, patch or slot pockets, and zip-front. Also called *bomber jacket*.

flyaway jacket Very short jacket, with a full back worn by women in the late 1940s and early 1950s.

fold-up raincoat Any raincoat that folds to small size, specifically a lightweight raincoat frequently of clear vinyl which folds to pocket size. Introduced as early as 1850 and then called **POCKET SIPHONIA** (sih'-foh'-nee-ah). See under **COATS AND JACKETS: SIPHONIA**.

French frock See **COATS AND JACKETS: FROCK COAT #1**.

frock coat 1. Suit coat of the 18th c. that was looser and shorter than dress coats. Single- or double-breasted, it buttoned to the waistline. At first it had a full skirt, flapped pockets, and a vent in back with two buttons at waist-



frock coat #1 1895

line, and a flat, turned down collar and no lapels. Initially considered suitable for country wear, but after 1770 was accepted for more formal wear as well. The **French frock coat**, for example, was worn from 1770 to 1800 for full dress and usually trimmed with gold embroidered buttons. As the silhouette of men's coats grew narrower, the frock coat skirt also narrowed. Less popular during the Empire period, the frock coat was important from 1816 until the end of the 19th c., after which it was worn by dignitaries and older men. The specific cut varied depending on the current fashionable silhouette, but the 19th c. coat always had a fitted waist attached with a waistline seam to a knee-length skirt that fell straight and met at the center front. Among the variations of the frock coat was the **jemmy frock**, described as fashionable in the 18th c., but by the 19th c. the **jemmy** had become a man's shooting coat styled like a many-pocketed short frock coat. 2. Hip-length fitted tailored jacket worn by women in 1890s.

frock greatcoat Man's coat worn from 1830s on, similar in cut to a **FROCK COAT** (see under **COATS AND JACKETS**) but usually double-breasted, longer, and styled for outdoor wear. Also see **COATS AND JACKETS: TOP FROCK**.

frock overcoat Boy's calf-length overcoat, worn in late 1880s and 1890s, made with fitted lines, usually with a large **CAPE COLLAR** (see under **NECKLINES AND COLLARS**).

fur fabric coat Coat made of fabric that simulates fur, e.g., **MODACRYLIC** pile fabric, sometimes colored with stripes to imitate mink; sometimes stenciled to look like leopard, giraffe, tiger, and zebra. Incorrectly called a *fake fur coat*.

gaberdine/gabardine (gab-er-deen)

Believed to have been the first fitted European coatlike garment with sleeves. Of Arabian origin, it was introduced from the East by way of Vienna in the mid-14th c. and was popular throughout the 15th c. It had a closed front and wide sleeves with the underarm seam open. Sometimes worn with a belt and was sometimes made of felt. Worn particularly by fashionable men until 1560, and by commoners until early 17th c. *Der.* Eastern *gaba*, “coat.” Also called *caban*.

Garibaldi jacket (gar-ih-bawl'-dee) Woman's square-cut waist-length jacket of 1860s made of red cashmere trimmed with black braid. *Der.* Inspired by clothes worn by Italian patriot Giuseppe Garibaldi.

gascon coat See COATS AND JACKETS: JUPE.

gendarme jacket (zhahn'-dam) Conventional jacket buttoned and adorned with brass buttons on sleeves, pockets, and down center front. Inspired by jackets worn by French policemen. *Der.* French, *gendarme*, “an armed policeman.”

Gladstone Man's short double-breasted overcoat of 1870s made with shoulder cape and borders of Persian lamb. Also see COATS AND JACKETS: ULSTER.

golf jacket Short waist-length jacket with zip-front, worn for playing golf. Often styled with a pleat in the back to allow for freedom of movement when swinging a golf club.

greatcoat Heavy voluminous overcoat worn by men and women, originally made with fur lining and styled similar to an ULSTER (see under COATS AND JACKETS). Term has been used from 19th c. to present.

guardsman coat Double-breasted, half-belted coat made with inverted box pleat in back, slashed pockets, and wide collar. *Der.* Adapted from coats of British guardsmen. Also called *officer's coat*.

hacking jacket Single-breasted fitted jacket similar to man's suit coat, made with slanting flap pockets and center back vent. Used for informal horseback riding and for general casual wear.

happi coat See SLEEPWEAR AND LOUNGEWEAR.

Henrietta jacket Loose three-quarter-length woman's jacket of 1890s with large collar falling over chest in front, frequently lined with quilted satin.

hunt coat See COATS AND JACKETS: PINK COAT.

hussar jacket Woman's short jacket of 1880s fastened with FROGS (see under CLOSURES) and trimmed with braid and worn over waistcoat. Inspired by uniforms of British troops returning from a campaign in Egypt.

imperial Man's coat worn in 1840s similar to loose-fitting, fly-front PALETOT overcoat (see under COATS AND JACKETS).

incroyable coat (on-kwai'-abla) Woman's coat of 1889 made with long coattails and wide lapels. Worn with lace *jabot* and waistcoat for afternoons. Adapted from the SWALLOW-TAILED COAT (see under COATS AND JACKETS). *Der.* Copied after styles of INCROYABLES (see DIRECTOIRE # 2).

inner-vest jacket Short jacket, sometimes with hood, snapped or buttoned-down front. Attached to the side seams in front is a vest usually similar to a sweater with front zipper.

insulated jacket Lightweight jacket usually made of tightly woven high-count 70 denier nylon, frequently quilted with padding of POLYESTER fiberfill. Usually made with zip-front and rib-knit at neck and wrists, and frequently given soil-resistant and water-repellent finish.

Inverness coat (in-ver-ness) **1.** Man's loose-fitting overcoat with below-elbow removable cape, introduced in 1859. In 1870s, sometimes had a separate cape over each shoulder. In 1880s, the sleeves were sometimes omitted. In 1890s, armholes were very large and a “sling” was used to support or rest arm. **2.** Knee-length coat with long removable cape or half-capes over the shoulders, like those worn by men in late-19th c. *Der.* From county of Invernessshire, Scotland.

Irene jacket Short, fitted, collarless woman's jacket of late 1860s cut away in front above waistline and sloping to below waistline in center back. Lavishly trimmed with braid around neckline, on sleeves, and in back.

jemmy See COATS AND JACKETS: FROCK COAT.

Joseph 1. Woman's green riding coat worn in the mid-18th c. 2. Woman's outdoor wrap worn from 1800 to 1810 with loose sleeves, similar to long tunic worn by Jewish men.

journade (zhur-naad) Short circular jacket with large full sleeves, or with sleeves long and slit. Worn in 14th and 15th c. for riding. Also spelled *jornade*.

judo jacket See ACTIVEWEAR: KARATE CLOTHING.

jump 1. Thigh-length 17th-c. soldier's coat, buttoned down front with long sleeves and vent in back, adopted by civilians. Also called *jumpcoat* and *jumpe*. 2. British name for woman's jacket.

jump coat Thigh-length coat for casual wear. Also see COATS AND JACKETS: CAR COAT.

junper coat See COATS AND JACKETS: BEAUFORT COAT.

jupe (zhoop) 16th- and 17th-c. British term for woman's riding coat worn with protective skirt or *safeguard*. Also called *gascon coat* and *jupon*.

justaucorps (zhust-o-kor')

1. Man's tight-fitting, knee-length coat worn over waistcoat. Borrowed from a military coat and worn from mid-17th to early 18th c. in England and France. 2. Woman's riding coat, styled like a man's frock coat, worn from mid-17th to early 18th c. Also called *demi-riding coat* and *habit à la française*. Also spelled *justacor*, *juste*, *justica*, *just-au-corps*. justaucorps c. 1690



karate jacket An indoor jacket styled like a Japanese kimono but short in length. Worn when engaging in sport of karate and also adopted for at-home wear by men and women in late 1960s. *Der.* Named for sport for which it is used. Also see ACTIVEWEAR: KARATE CLOTHING.

laboratory coat/smock Single-breasted coat, usually with turned-down collar and REVERS (see NECKLINES AND COLLARS), made of

white cotton or manufactured fiber. Worn to protect street clothes while working in chemical or medical laboratory. Also called *lab coat*.

leather jerkin See COATS AND JACKETS: BUFF COAT.

Leicester jacket Englishman's suit or lounge jacket with RAGLAN SLEEVES (see under SHOULDERS AND SLEEVES). Worn in 1857.

lily benjamin See COATS AND JACKETS: BENJAMIN.

Lindbergh jacket Waist-length heavy woolen or leather jacket with large pockets, lapels, and rolled collar. Made with waistband and cuffs of stretchable rib-knit wool. *Der.* Type of jacket worn by Colonel Charles A. Lindbergh, who made the first solo flight from New York to Paris across the Atlantic in 1927.

London Fog® Trademark for London Fog, a manufacturer of men's and women's raincoat of classic style.

Louis XV basque Woman's fitted tailored jacket of 1890s worn open down center front, revealing waistcoat or vest. Usually hip length with a standing collar and cut tabs extending from waistline to hem. *Der.* Named after Louis XV, who ruled France from 1710 to 1774.

Louis XVI basque Woman's fitted jacket of late 1890s made with a point in front at waistline. Had a standing lace-edged MEDICI COLLAR (see under NECKLINES AND COLLARS) extending to two squared lapels and moderate-sized leg-of-mutton sleeves with cuffs that fell over the wrists. Skirt flared over hips, had pleats in center back, and was open at center front. *Der.* Named for Louis XVI of France (1754–1793).

lounging jacket See COATS AND JACKETS: SMOKING JACKET and SACK JACKET.

lumber jacket/lumberjack Waist-length jacket with a bloused effect and rib-knitted bands at waist and cuffs. Made of woven plaid wool fabric. Originally worn by woodsmen in the lumbering trade. Introduced for sportswear in the late 1920s and worn by both adults and children. Reintroduced in early 1980s.

Macfarlane Man's overcoat made with separate cape over each sleeve and side slits to permit access to pockets of inner garment. Worn from 1850s to end of 19th c.

mackinaw jacket/mackinaw coat Hip-length sport jacket of heavy wool woven in patterns similar to those used for blankets. Improved in the winter of 1811 when Captain Charles Roberts, a British officer, became stranded with his patrol on St. Martin's Island in the Straits of Mackinac. When reinforcements failed to reach him, warm coats were made from blankets of wide strips and various patterns. Became popular for explorers and woodsmen of the north and continued in popularity to present. *Der.* Named after Mackinaw City, Michigan, located at tip of Michigan facing the Straits of Mackinac.



mackinaw jacket

Mackintosh **1.** Loose-fitting waterproof coat made of patented India rubber cloth of olive drab or dark green with waterproof straps over the seams. Introduced in 1836 and named for the inventor, Charles Macintosh, who patented fabric in 1823. **2.** British slang for various types of raincoats, often abbreviated to *mac*. **3.** Long coat with single or double detachable cape introduced for women at end of 19th c. for a raincoat. Made either of "single texture" with printed or woven fabric on outside and heavy rubber coating on inside or "double texture" with a layer of rubber between two fabrics. *Der.* Named after Charles Macintosh, who first invented the rubberized fabric in 1823.

mandarin coat Straight-lined coat with Chinese neckline.

mandarin jacket Jacket with standing-band collar copied from styles of Chinese Mandarin costume. Shows some similarities to NEHRU JACKET (see under COATS AND JACKETS).

mandilion/mandeville (man-dill'-yun) Loose hip-length jacket with narrow long sleeves worn by men from late 16th to early

17th c. Often worn COLLEY WESTONWARD (e.g., worn by soldiers around shoulders as a cape, with sleeves hanging free). Later worn with short sleeves, sometimes slit, for LIVERY.

man-tailored jacket **1.** Woman's suit jacket tailored similar to a man's suit jacket and made in fabrics of pinstripes, tweeds, and other men's wear fabrics. Style may be made with one, two, or three buttons or may be double-breasted. **2.** First jackets with mannish-type tailoring were introduced for women as suit jackets in the late 19th c., and the suits were called TAILOR-MADES. Continued in various styles as a type of jacket suitable for working women.

mantee Woman's coat of 18th c. worn open in front showing STOMACHER (#2) and PETTICOAT (#2) underneath.

mantelet See COATS AND JACKETS: PARDESSUS.

marlotte 16th-c. woman's outer garment, similar to short *mantle*, open in front with back falling in folds. Made with short puffed sleeves and a STANDING COLLAR OR RUFF (see NECKLINES AND COLLARS).

marquise mantle (mar-keez) Short lace-trimmed taffeta woman's mantlet of mid-1840s with short sleeves. Made with fitted back and flounce below the waist. Also called *marquise*.

masher dust wrap Tight-fitting man's INVERNESS COAT (see under COATS AND JACKETS) of 1880s having large armholes with a separate cape over each shoulder.

maxi coat Term for any ankle-length coat first used in 1969 and thereafter. At the time these coats represented a radical change from MINI COAT styles. See COATS AND JACKETS: MINI COAT.

mess jacket **1.** White waist-length jacket made with large REVERS (see NECKLINES AND COLLARS) in front and no buttons. Back section is cut in three pieces with center section extending to shoulders in a modified "T," center waistline pointed in back. Worn by busboys and waiters. Formerly worn in white as a summer semiformal jacket for men. Originally worn as part of naval formal evening dress. *Der.* From Naval "mess room." **2.** Waist-length jacket with standing collar and LEG-OF-

MUTTON SLEEVES (see under SHOULDERS AND SLEEVES) worn by women in 1890s.

Metternich sack (mett'-er-nik) Woman's collarless, knee-length wrap of mid-1860s made of black velvet with three BOX PLEATS (see under CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS) at center back. Trimmed at neck, front, shoulders, and cuffs with wide velvet ribbon embroidered with white cord. *Der.* Named for Prince von Metternich, Austrian statesman of the mid-19th c.

Michael Jackson jacket Red leather jacket designed by Claude Montana for Michael Jackson in the video "Beat It." Copied in polyurethane, buttoning down the front in windbreaker-style with stand-up collar and as many as twenty-seven short zippers placed in unusual places (e.g., three placed diagonally on each side of chest and on shoulder blades in back, vertically at midriff, two placed at armholes so that sleeves are detachable). Trademarked and licensed for sale by Stadium Management Corp. and introduced in 1984. *Der.* Named for Michael Jackson, popular singer.

midi coat (mid'-ee) Mid-calf-length coat introduced in 1967 in radical contrast to thigh-length MINI COAT (see under COATS AND JACKETS). Made in many styles. *Der.* From term coined by *Women's Wear Daily*.

military coat Any coat that borrows details from military coats and jackets (e.g., braid trim, epaulets, gold buttons, or high-standing collar). Usually a fitted double-breasted coat with slightly flared skirt.

military frock coat Man's FROCK COAT (see under COATS AND JACKETS), worn from early 1820s on, made with standing collar, no lapels, and no flaps on pockets. Later styles had rolled collars and lapels.

military tunic 1. Term used first in France in 1670 for long tunic worn by soldiers over a full, sleeved waistcoat. 2. Man's long tubelike coat with skirts lapped over in front; adopted by British army in 1855.

mini coat Thigh-length coat introduced in mid-1960s and made in any number of styles.

monkey jacket Short jacket made of heavy fabric like a PILOT COAT (see under COATS AND JACKETS). Worn by sailors in rough weather from 1850s on.

morning coat See COATS AND JACKETS: CUT-AWAY.

Moscow wrapper Man's loose-fitting overcoat of 1874 with PAGODA SLEEVES (see under SHOULDERS AND SLEEVES), fly front, narrow turned-down collar of astrakhan fur, and other fur trimming.

motorcycle jacket Close-fitting black leather jacket waist-length, fastened to one side of center front with zipper, snap fasteners, or buttons. Popular in the 1960s and worn by both children and adults, continuing into the present. Very much like the PERFECTO JACKET (see under COATS AND JACKETS). Also called a *cycle jacket*.

muff's cloak Man's coat of late 16th and early 17th c. Same as *Dutch coat*. (Note: The "Dutch" in this case means "German" and is a mistranslation of the word *Deutsch*, meaning German.)

Napoleon coat Woman's man-tailored hip-length jacket of mid-1890s with standing MILITARY COLLAR (see under NECKLINES AND COLLARS), full LEG-OF-MUTTON SLEEVES (see under SHOULDERS AND SLEEVES), military braid down the front, and fastened with large BRANDENBURGS (see CLOSURES: FROGS). *Der.* Named for Napoleon, who wore a similar style during his military career.

Nehru jacket/Nehru coat (nay'-roo) Single-breasted jacket or coat, slightly fitted, with a standing band collar introduced in late 1960s. Adapted from type of coat worn by Indian maharajahs. *Der.* From wearing of this type of coat by Jawaharlal Nehru, Prime Minister of India, 1947–1964. Shown at NEHRU SUIT.

Newmark/Newmarket coat See COATS AND JACKETS: CUTAWAY.

Newmarket jacket Woman's close-fitting hip-length jacket with turned-down collar, silkfaced lapels, flapped pockets, and cuffed sleeves. Frequently part of the "masculine" TAILOR-MADE fashions of the 1890s.

Newmarket overcoat 1. Man's long single-breasted overcoat of 1880s similar to a FROCK OVERCOAT (see under COATS AND JACKETS). Usually made with velvet collar and cuffs and frequently made of HOMESPUN. 2. Woman's long single or double-breasted winter coat with velvet collar, lapels, tight sleeves, cuffs, and flapped pockets. Made of heavy fabric for winter from mid-1880s to 1890s.

Newmarket top frock Man's overcoat of 1895 similar to a FROCK COAT (see under COATS AND JACKETS), made of rough CHEVIOT fabric with velvet collar, pockets on waist seams, and the lower part lined with checked fabric—upper part with silk or satin.

norfolk jacket Belted hip-length jacket with two box pleats from shoulders to hem, on front and back. Matching fabric belt is either threaded through slots under pleats or worn over them. Worn by men for sport and travel since 1880s and associated with the character Dr. Watson of Sir Arthur Conan Doyle's Sherlock Holmes stories. Popular for young boys from 1890s to about 1920 and revived periodically. See NORFOLK SUIT in alphabetical listing.



Norfolk jacket

norfolk shirt Man's lounging jacket styled like a shirt made of rough tweed with box pleat down center back and two box pleats on either side of front. Worn with matching belt. Had a tailored collar and bands at wrist. Worn from 1866 to 1880.

officer's coat See COATS AND JACKETS: GUARDSMAN COAT.

oriental wrapper See COATS AND JACKETS: ZOUAVE COAT.

overcoat Man's coat, heavier than a topcoat, designed for very cold weather. Sometimes lined with fur or modacrylic pile and made in any of a variety of styles.

Oxonian jacket Two- or three-button single-breasted tweed jacket worn by men in 1850s through 1860s. Made with many pockets and

a back shaped by three seams. Also called *Oxford coatee*.

paddock coat Man's long semi-fitted overcoat worn from 1892 on, made with single- or double-breasted fly-front closing, large pockets, and pleat-covered back vent.

paletot (pal-ah-tow' or pal-tow') Generally meaning an outdoor coat or overcoat. Used for a number of different coat styles for men and women from approximately the 1830s to end of century. For men there were these variations. 1. In 1830s, the paletot was a short overcoat made without a waistline seam and with or without a short back vent. Sometimes pleated at side seams. 2. The **paletot-sac** was single- or double-breasted, cut short and straight, sometimes made with a collar, sometimes with a hood and worn in 1840s and 1850s, whereas the **English wrap** was a double-breasted paletot sac worn in 1840s and similar to a loose CHESTERFIELD COAT (see under COATS AND JACKETS). Women's paletots had these variations. 1. Late 1830s to end of 19th c., a woman's caped three-quarter-length cloak that hung in stiff pleats from the shoulders. By mid-1840s it had three capes and armholes trimmed with flaps. 2. From 1860s to 1880s, a woman's short paletot was also called a *yachting jacket*. 3. From mid-1860s to mid-1880s, it was a long fitted outdoor coat—reaching to below the knees, frequently trimmed with lace and having tight sleeves. 4. **paletot-redingote** (red'-in-gote), of late 1860s, was also long and fitted and made in Princess style with no seam at the waistline. It had buttons down the front and revers and was sometimes made with circular shoulder capes. 5. Another paletot worn in 1870s had wide cuffed sleeves and WATTEAU PLEATS (see under CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS) in the back. *Der.* Dutch *paltrok*, from *pals*, "palace" and *rok*, "garment."

paletot-redingote See COATS AND JACKETS: PALETOT.

paletot-sac See COATS AND JACKETS: PALETOT.

palmerston wrapper Man's single-breasted, loose-fitting SACK OVERCOAT (see under COATS AND JACKETS) of mid-1850s made with wide collar and lapels. Sleeves were full at wrists with no cuffs and pockets had side flaps. *Der.* Named after British statesman 3rd Viscount Palmerston, Henry John Temple, who was prime minister of England between 1855 and 1865.

pardessus (par-de'-soo) 1. French term for man's overcoat. 2. Generic term used from 1840s to end of 19th c. for woman's outdoor garment of half or three-quarter length. Made with sleeves, fitted waistline, and frequently with a cape trimmed with lace or velvet. Also called *mantelet* and *paletot*. *Der.* French, "for on top."

parka Loose-fitting pull-on jacket made with an attached hood that is sometimes trimmed with real or synthetic fur. Worn originally by the Eskimos and introduced during the 1930s for winter sportswear (e.g., skiing and skating). Still worn in all cold climates. *Der.* Russian-Aleutian, "pelt."



parka

patrol jacket 1. Men: Jacket of military cut made with five-button single-breasted closing and Prussian collar. Worn in late 1870s with tight knee pants for bicycling. 2. Women: Tight-fitting hip-length jacket of late 1880s trimmed with military braid across front. Also had a standing collar at neck and tight-fitting sleeves finished with cuffs.

pea jacket/pea coat 1. Copy of U.S. sailor's hip-length, straight, double-breasted navy-blue wool coat with notched lapels, vertical slash pockets, and vent in back. Inspiration for coats designed by Yves Saint Laurent in Paris in 1960s and a classic coat style for men, women, and children. Also called *pea coat* and formerly

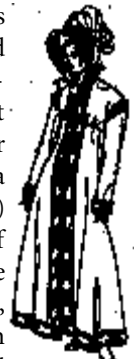


pea jacket #1

called a *pilot coat*. 2. From 1830s on, man's double-breasted, unfitted thigh-length jacket with wide lapels and notched collar. Worn either as an overcoat or as a suit jacket. In 1850s had large buttons, usually six. Also called a *pilot coat*. *Der.* So called because it was made of "pilot cloth." From 1860 known as a *reefer*.

peasant coat Mid-length coat lavishly trimmed down front with embroidery, sometimes with fur borders and cuffs, fashionable in late 1960s.

pelisse (peh-leese') Meanings and spellings of this term evolved over time. Its earliest forms involve some use of fur. Later it becomes a warm, winter outdoor garment. 1. In the Middle Ages a *pelice* or *pelicon* (pel'-ees-sohn) referred to any of a number of fur-trimmed garments. 2. In the 18th c., for women it was a caped, or hooded, three-quarter-length cloak with armhole slits and entire collar, hem, and front usually edged with fur, sometimes with silk or satin. 3. In the early 19th c. it was generally full-length, often made of handsome silk fabrics with a padded or quilted lining for warmth. Sometimes it had one or more shoulder capes. It was fitted and followed the current fashionable SILHOUETTE. Out of fashion by 1850. 4. Revived in the late 1800s, for women it was a full-length winter mantle gathered on the shoulders and having loose sleeves, often made of silk, velvet, or satin. 5. For men in the late 19th and early 20th c., the term was applied to a heavy fur-lined coat with fur collar, worn particularly with formal clothes. Also spelled *pellice*.



pelisse #3, 1819

pembroke paletot (pal-ah-tow' or pal-tow') Man's calf-length, long-waisted overcoat worn in mid. 1850s made with wide lapels, double-breasted with eight buttons and easy-fitting sleeves with turned-back cuffs. Also had flapped side pockets and vertical breast pocket.

perfect jacket Black leather jacket, originating during World War II and worn by Marlon Brando in the 1954 film *The Wild One*, that

C

became a symbol of rebellious youth and went on to become part of mainstream fashion. Synonym: *Bronx jacket*.

Petersham frock coat

FROCK COAT (see under COATS AND JACKETS) of 1830s with slanted flapped pockets on hips and collar, lapels, and cuffs of velvet. *Der.* Named for Viscount Charles Petersham.

Petersham greatcoat Man's overcoat, with short shoulder cape, worn in 1830s. *Der.* Named for Viscount Charles Petersham.

pilot coat See COATS AND JACKETS: PEA JACKET.

pink coat Crimson-colored hunting jacket styled like a man's one-button suit coat with peaked lapels, back vent, and black velvet collar. Worn by men and women for fox-hunting. Also called *hunt coat*.

pocket siphonia See COATS AND JACKETS: SIPHONIA.

Polish greatcoat Full-length tight-fitting man's coat with collar, cuffs, and lapels of Russian lambskin. Closed with FROG fasteners (see under CLOSURES) or loops. Worn with evening dress in early 19th c.

Polish jacket Woman's waist-length jacket made with REVERS (see under NECKLINES AND COLLARS) and collar. Sleeves were wide at wrist, squared off, and slit to elbow on inside seam. Usually made of cashmere lined with quilted satin. Worn outdoors for informal occasions in mid-1840s.

polka 1. Woman's short outdoor jacket of mid-1840s made with full sleeves, cashmere or velvet fabric and lined with silk. A variety of CASAWECK (see under COATS AND JACKETS). 2. Woman's knitted close-fitting jacket.

polo coat Double- or single-breasted camel, vicuña, or camel-colored wool coat with notched collar and tied with a sash. Introduced in 1920s for men's spectator sports,



perfecto jacket



polo coat

for women in 1930s, this became a classic coat style that is made in many colors and fabrics.

polonaise (pol-on-nays') 1. Man's jacket of early 1770s, also called a *polonese frock*. 2. In 1830s a military redingote, usually of blue fabric worn by civilians. Also called a *redingote*.

pommel slicker Raincoat worn when riding horseback in early 20th c. Similar to other raincoats but with long vent in back. Also called a *saddle coat*.

postillion coat (pos-till'-yon) Double-breasted fitted GREATCOAT (see COATS AND JACKETS) with flap pockets, high REGENCY COLLAR, and broad REVERS (see under NECKLINES AND COLLARS). *Der.* From clothes worn by *postillions*, "men on horseback accompanying carriages."

Prince Albert coat 1. Double-breasted long FROCK COAT (see under COATS AND JACKETS) worn in late 19th c., with flat collar, usually of velvet. Worn for formal occasions (e.g., weddings and funerals) until about 1920. 2. Adaptation of this coat for women worn in late 1890s—a double-breasted fitted, knee-length coat with turned-down collar and revers, flared skirt seamed at waistline, with two unpressed pleats with button trim at center back. *Der.* Named for Prince Albert of Saxe-Coburg-Gotha, consort of England's Queen Victoria.

Prince of Wales jacket Man's jacket of late 1860s similar to REEFER (see under COATS AND JACKETS). Cut in double-breasted style with three pairs of buttons. Named for Edward VII of England before he became king.

Prince Rupert Woman's full-length fitted coat of late 19th c. made of velvet or plush, worn with a blouse and skirt. *Der.* Named after Prince Rupert (1619–82), son of a Bohemian king, who supported Charles I in the English Civil War and became a councilor to Charles II after the restoration of the monarchy. His biography was published in 1899.

princess coat Woman's fitted coat cut in long panels that flare at hem. Has no seam at the waistline and usually made single-breasted. A classic style. *Der.* Style claimed to have been

introduced by Worth about 1860 in a morning dress for Empress Eugénie.

Prussian collar coat Man's coat with narrow standing collar of 19th c. with ends nearly meeting in front, or worn turned down.

PVC jacket Hip-length simulated leather-look jackets made with conventional styling including a convertible collar, sometimes a yoke, buttoned- or zip-front, long sleeves, and tied or buckled belt. Made of polyvinyl chloride, a leather substitute that is soft and supple, washable, and water resistant.

pyramid coat Tent-shaped woman's coat of late 1940s and early 1950s made with narrow shoulders and wide hem.

raccoon coat Long bulky coat of raccoon fur with large rolled collar worn originally by college men in the 1920s. Popular again in the mid-1960s and usually purchased from thrift shops.

racing jacket Lightweight two-ply nylon jacket with zip-front and drawstring hem. Made in various official colors with a wide stripe outlined with two narrow stripes of red, running from shoulder to hem on left side. Jacket is wind-resistant and water-repellent. Originally worn for auto stock racing, now available for men and women. Usually has a patch printed on right chest with automobile brand emblems.

raglan cape/raglan coat Fly-front or double-breasted overcoat first worn in 1857. It had slit pockets and wide RAGLAN SLEEVES (see under SHOULDERS AND SLEEVES) that extended in V-shaped form to neck rather than having a seam at the shoulder. The name was subsequently applied to any long, loose coat with raglan sleeves. *Der.* Named for Lord Raglan (see RAGLAN, LORD).

raincoat Clothing originally designed to be worn in rainy weather, now also worn as *top coat* in fair weather. Made of waterproof material or given a special surface finish to make it water repellent. Raincoats were introduced in 1830 after the perfection of a rubberized fabric by Charles Macintosh in 1823. Original fabric was waterproof but had an objectionable odor. TRENCHCOATS (see under

COATS AND JACKETS) were introduced in World War I. Modern technology in the development of water-repellent finishes in recent years has made it possible to use a greater number of fabrics for raincoats. Another innovation is GORE-TEX®. Also see COATS AND JACKETS: SIPHONIA.

rain or shine coat Fabric coat treated with water-repellent finish so that it can be worn as an all-purpose coat.

rajah jacket **1. Men:** similar to NEHRU JACKET (see under COATS AND JACKETS). **2. Women:** usually a tunic-length jacket, with standing collar that is usually worn with pants. *Der.* Shortened form of "maharajah."

ranch coat Leather car coat or jacket made in western style with leather side uppermost, sometimes made of or lined with shearling (see LEATHERS).

redingote (red'-in-gote) Men: **1.** A full overcoat having a large collar worn for riding in France about 1725. **2.** In 1830 a greatcoat of blue cloth in military style closed with frogs, had sloping pockets, and a fur collar. Also called a *polonaise*. Women: **3.** Coat adapted from man's coat in 1790s in lighter-weight fabrics and worn as part of a dress rather than an outdoor coat. **4.** During the Empire period, it was an outer coat. **5.** From 1820s on, it was a dress cut like a coat either fastening down all the way down the front or with the skirt open to show an underskirt. **6.** In 1890s became an ensemble with matching coat and dress, with the coat usually being cut a little shorter than the dress. **7.** Contemporary: A matching or contrasting coat and dress worn together as an ensemble. *Der.* French, "mannish woman's frock coat" or English, "riding coat."

reefer **1.** Man's double-breasted, thigh-length boxy jacket called a *pea jacket* or *pilot coat* from 1830s to 1860s and taking on the name "reefer" about 1860.



reefer #5

See COATS AND JACKETS: PEA JACKET #2. **2.** Women's and children's short jacket of 1890s and early 20th c., frequently worn with matching skirt as a suit. Made with unfitted double-breasted front and fitted back. **3.** Since 1960s, a short double-breasted car coat. **4.** In 1930s and 1940s, a woman's single-breasted fitted coat with large lapels, revived in 1983 and in use as basic coat style after this.

Regency coat Double-breasted coat for man or woman made with wide lapels and high-rolled REGENCY COLLAR (see NECKLINES AND COLLARS.) Sometimes has large cuffs. Man's coat has nipped waist and deep vent in back. *Der.* Inspired by coats of the Regency period.

reversible jacket **1.** Any jacket that can be worn on either side. **2.** Short down-quilted nylon jacket with zip-out sleeves and zip-front made with knitted cuffs and waistband. Reverses to a knitted jacket with removable sleeves.

riding coat **1.** Tailored fitted jacket worn for horseback riding, similar in cut to PINK COAT, but in other colors or plaids. Also see COATS AND JACKETS: HACKING JACKET and PINK COAT.

2. See COATS AND JACKETS: CUTAWAY.

sack jacket Loose, comfortable man's jacket, introduced in the late 1840s, that had no waistline, a straight front, center vent in back, sleeves without cuffs, and a small collar with short lapels. Called a *lounging jacket* in England, this jacket is a forerunner of tuxedo jackets and contemporary men's sport jackets.

sack overcoat Man's above-the-knee, loose-fitting overcoat worn from 1840s to about 1875. Made with sleeves wide at wrist, WELT POCKETS (see under POCKETS), and back cut in one piece with center slit. The edges of coat were double-stitched or bound. In 1860s closed higher and styled with three or four-button closing, narrow lapels, optional pockets, and sometimes trimmed with velvet at collar, cuffs, and lapels.



sack jacket 1840s

saddle coat See COATS AND JACKETS: POMMEL SLICKER.

safari coat See COATS AND JACKETS: BUSH JACKET.

Sardinian sac Loose-fitting single-breasted man's overcoat of mid-19th c. Made with square-cut collar, no lapels, and full bell-shaped sleeves. Worn flung over shoulders and secured by cord with tassel in front.

Scarborough ulster Caped and hooded man's ULSTER (see under COATS AND JACKETS) without sleeves worn in early 1890s.

señorita Woman's waist-length, bolero-style jacket of mid-1860s made with three-quarter or full-length sleeves and lavishly trimmed with braid, fringe, buttons, or lace. Worn over a blouse with full sleeves. Also called a *Spanish jacket*.

shearling jacket Jacket made of a sheepskin tanned with wool attached. Leather side is sueded or buffed and used for the outside of the coat, with woolly side worn inside. Collar is made with wool side out. Also called *sheepskin jacket*.

sheepskin jacket See COATS AND JACKETS: SHEARLING JACKET.

shirt-jac See SHIRTS.

shooting coat Term used from 1860s to 1890s for morning coat. See COATS AND JACKETS: CUTAWAY.

shortie coat Woman's short coat, about fingertip length, made in boxy fitted or semi-fitted styles, worn in 1940s and 1950s. Revived periodically.

show coat Longer style riding jacket or suit coat with hacking pockets (pockets with flaps placed at an angle), fitted waist, narrow lapels, three-button closing, inverted pleats at sides, and long slash in center back. Worn for semi-formal showing of horses.

simar (si-mar') Woman's loose-fitting jacket with side flaps, or skirts, extending to knees, sometimes worn over petticoat to make a dress in 17th and 18th c. Also spelled *samarre*.

siphonia (sy-fō-ni-a) Long weather-proof overcoat worn by men in 1850s and 1860s. The **pocket siphonia** was short and thin enough to be rolled up and carried in case of rain.

skeleton waterproof Woman's full-length front-buttoned raincoat of 1890s made with large armholes, instead of sleeves, covered by a hip-length circular cape.

ski jacket Any type of wind-resistant jacket worn when skiing. Conventional type zips up front and may be made of nylon, wool, fur, or quilted fabric. Frequently has an attached hood. Usually made waist or hip length with zippered pockets.

slicker **1.** Bright-yellow oilskin coat, or similar coat of rubberized fabric in other colors, usually fastened with clips in front. Originally worn by sailors, now often worn with SOU'WESTER HAT (see HEADWEAR) by fishermen and children. **2.** A type of yellow rubber raincoat with slash in back to waist and extra insert so that each side can be fastened around legs to form protection when riding horseback in rainy weather.

sling-duster British term for coat worn by women in mid- and late 1880s. Made with DOLMAN OR SLING SLEEVES (see SHOULDERS AND SLEEVES). Frequently made of black-and-white checked silk.

smoking jacket **1.** Man's jacket of velvet or other luxurious cloth, or with velvet or satin shawl collar. May be with or without buttons, sometimes has a sash, and is worn at home for informal enter-



smoking jacket #1 1893

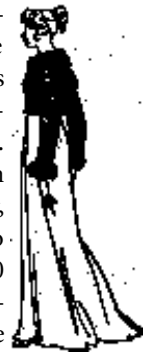
taining since 1850. **2.** English version of American TUXEDO JACKET (see under COATS AND JACKETS), a short black semiformal dinner jacket made with satin lapels, called by the French "le smoking." Adapted for women by Paris designer, Yves Saint Laurent, in mid-1960s.

snorkel jacket Warm hooded parka, made with front-opening zipper extending up over the wearer's chin, giving the hood the look of a "snorkel" (a submarine's air-intake or exhaust tube). Made hip- to knee-length usually of water-repellent nylon satin or taffeta with quilted or pile lining and fake-fur edging around hood. Characterized by an inside

drawstring waistline and knitted inner cuffs. Also has a multiplicity of zippered and snapped pockets, including one for pencils on the sleeve and a flap fastened with buttons and loops to keep snow out of the front zipper. Very popular in early 1970s for men, women, and children.

Spanish jacket **1.** See COATS AND JACKETS: SEÑORITA. **2.** Short sleeveless jacket worn in 1862, somewhat similar to a bolero with no fasteners in front. Sometimes has a collar attached to a low neckline and often has rounded edges at hem in front.

spencer Short open jacket, usually ending at or above the waistline. A version with lapels and long sleeves was reintroduced in mid-1980s for women. Thought to have been first worn by a British peer, Lord Spencer, and worn by men from 1790 to 1850 and by women from 1790 until about 1820. Three different stories of the origin of the style are told: (a) Lord Spencer spencer c. 1810 burned one of the coattails of his jacket and cut off the other; (b) He was out riding and tore one of the coattails, so tore off the other; and (c) He made a wager he could start a new fashion and proceeded to cut off the coattails of his jacket, thus creating a new popular fashion.



spencerette Woman's fitted jacket with low-cut neckline edged with lace worn at end of Empire Period, about 1814.

sport jacket **1.** Conventional tailored jacket made in tweed, plaid, or plain colors worn with contrasting pants for business and general wear since 1920s. Also see COATS AND JACKETS: BLAZER. **2.** Outerwear



sport jacket #1

worn for school and general wear in place of coat during warmer weather or on informal occasions. **3.** Outerwear designed for specific sports, e.g., golf, skiing, and cycling, sometimes accepted for general wear.

stadium coat **1.** Car coat of three-quarter length sometimes made with SHEARLING collar (see FURS and LEATHER) and TOGGLE closing (see under CLOSURES) introduced in early 1960s. By 1980s sometimes made with inner-zipper VEST SWEATER (see under SWEATERS) in front. **2.** In early 1980s three-quarter-length reversible jacket made of waterproof vinyl with drawstring hood, two large pockets, and fastened with grippers at sleeves and front. *Der.* Worn at football stadiums.

storm coat Heavy coat sometimes quilted and made with water-repellent finish. May be styled with SHEARLING (see under FURS), pile or quilted fabric lining and collar. By 1980s entire coat was made of quilted nylon.

str roller jacket A semiformal man's suit jacket similar to a TUXEDO JACKET with satin lapels and peaked collar. Also called a SACK JACKET (see CROSS-REFERENCES under COATS AND JACKETS).

suburban coat Same as COATS AND JACKETS: CAR COAT.

sultane jacket (sul-tané) Very short, sleeveless bolero-type woman's jacket worn in late 1880s. Similar to ZOUAVE JACKET (see under COATS AND JACKETS).

surtout (ser-too') **1.** Contemporary French and British term for man's cloak or overcoat. *Der.* French, literally "over all." **2.** Synonymous with a number of different overcoat styles in the 17th to the 19th c. See listings under COATS AND JACKETS for BRANDENBURG, WRAP-RASCAL, GREATCOAT, and WRAPPER #2. **3.** Caped coat worn by women in late 18th c.

swagger coat Pyramid-shaped woman's coat with flared bias back. Usually with raglan sleeves and large saucer-shaped buttons attached by fabric cord. Popular in 1930s, revived in 1970s.

swallow-tailed coat Man's formal evening coat that does not button in front, and is cut with peaked lapels trimmed with satin or grosgrain. Made waist-length in front with two



swallow-tailed coat
c. 1895

long tails in back. *Der.* Back resembles the "tail of a swallow." Also called *tails*.

sweater coat Knitted, often cardigan-style, coat.

sweat jacket Garment similar to a sweatshirt but open down the front and closing with buttons or a zipper. Made of cotton knit jersey with cotton fleece lining. Originally gray-colored, but now made in any color.

Taglioni (tal-yoh-nee') Man's fitted GREATCOAT (see under COATS AND JACKETS) reaching to knees, worn from 1839 to 1845. Usually double-breasted with wide turned-back lapels, large flat collar, and cuffs of satin or velvet. Also had a back vent and slit pockets bound with twill fabric. *Der.* Named after Italian ballet master Filippo Taglioni (1777–1871).

Taglioni frock coat Man's single-breasted FROCK COAT (see under COATS AND JACKETS) worn from 1838 to 1842, made with short full skirt, broad notched collar, slashed or flapped pockets, and back vent. *Der.* Named after Italian ballet master Filippo Taglioni (1777–1871).

tail coat/tails See COATS AND JACKETS: SWALLOW-TAILED COAT.

Tallien redingote (tal-ee-en' red'-in-gote) Outdoor coat worn by women in late 1860s, created by French couturier Worth. Matched to dress or made of black silk, coat had a heart-shaped neckline, full back, and a sash tied in large bow with long ends in back. Small bows were tied to ends of sash. *Der.* Named for Theresa Tallien, Princess de Chimay (1773–1835), a fashionable woman who is said to have owned 30 wigs of different colors.

Talma lounge A jacket worn by men in 1898 made with raglan sleeves, straight fronts, and curved or slanted pockets. Worn as an informal jacket. *Der.* Named for François Joseph Talma (1763–1826), a French tragic actor of Consulate and Empire period.

Talma overcoat Raglan-sleeved greatcoat with large armholes worn by men in 1898. *Der.* Named for François Joseph Talma (1763–1826), a French tragic actor of Consulate and Empire period.

teddybear coat Bulky coat of natural-colored alpaca-pile fabric worn by men, women, and

children in 1920s. *Der.* Named after the teddy bear, a child's toy of early 20th c., which was named for President Theodore Roosevelt.

templar cloak See COATS AND JACKETS: CABAN.

tent coat Woman's pyramid-shaped coat, widely flared at hem, popular in 1930s, 1940s, and in mid-1960s. Revived periodically.

three-decker Term used from late 1870s on for man's or woman's triple-caped ULSSTER (see under COATS AND JACKETS).

three-seamer British tailoring term for man's jacket with center back seam and two side seams, contrasted with coat having SIDE BODIES and five seams. Used from 1860 on.

toggle coat See COATS AND JACKETS: DUFFEL COAT.

topcoat 1. Man's or woman's lightweight coat in any style, designed to wear over suit jacket or dress. See COATS AND JACKETS: OVERCOAT.

2. Woman's tailored, full-length, straight-cut coat worn in 1890s, with moderate LEG-OF-MUTTON SLEEVES (see under SHOULDERS AND SLEEVES), tailored collar, and fly-front closing. Had large flap pockets on hips and small ticket pocket above.

top frock Man's overcoat cut like a FROCK COAT (see under COATS AND JACKETS) but longer, worn from 1830 on. Usually double-breasted and intended to be worn without a suit coat.

topper coat Woman's hip-length coat, often made with a flared silhouette, popular in early 1940s.

toreador jacket (tor-ay'-ah-dor) Waist-length woman's jacket with epaulet shoulder trimming frequently braid-trimmed and worn unfastened. Adapted from jackets of bull-fighters in Spain and Mexico.

tow coat Three-quarter-length coat similar to a *toggle coat* or *duffel coat*, designed for winter sports.

trench coat Coat created by Thomas Burberry during World War I for soldiers that was made of a chemically finished, water-repellent cotton gabardine. After the War the style became an all-purpose civilian coat made of a water-repellent fabric in double-breasted style with a convertible collar, large

lapels, epaulets, fabric belt, slotted pockets, and a vent in the back. Over the shoulders in back it had an extra hanging yoke and an extra flap hung from the front right shoulder. In the 1940s women adopted the trench coat, which has become a classic style.



trench coat

tuxedo jacket Man's semiformal jacket made in one-button style with shawl collar usually faced with satin or faille. Until the late 1960s, it was conventionally black or navy for winter and white for summer. Now styled in any color or pattern (e.g., red, green, blue, or plaid fabrics, sometimes with notched collar). Introduced in 1886. *Der.* After Tuxedo Park Country Club, Tuxedo Park, New York, where it was first worn by Griswold P. Lorillard. Also called a *dinner jacket*.

tweed jacket 1. Man's conventional sport jacket of tweed wool fabric or a wool blend usually made with traditional single-breasted styling. 2. Women's jacket of almost any style made out of yarn-dyed wool of a textured nature and usually worn with matching skirt or pants. Popular in the 1920s and 1930s for women as suitable for the "country" rather than town wear.

ulster 1. Man's heavy overcoat introduced in late 1860s. Usually made in single- or double-breasted style with a belted back or with a complete belt and detachable hood. By the 1870s, a cape was more usual. About 1875, a TICKET POCKET (see POCKETS) was placed in left sleeve above cuff, and by 1890 a *fly-front* closing was used. Length varied, the coat being ankle length in 1870s. 2. Woman's coat similar to man's worn from late 1870s on. When made with a triple cape, it was called a CARRICK. Sometimes made of water-proof fabric, sometimes with a train. *Der.* Named after a northern province of Ireland in which the cities of Belfast and Londonderry, manufacturing centers for heavy coats,

are located. **3.** British name for a long, loose-fitting overcoat.

varens Woman's short outdoor jacket of 1847 with loose sleeves. Made of cashmere or velvet with silk lining, a variation of the *CASAWECK* and *POLKA* (see under *COATS AND JACKETS*).

va reuse (vah-reuz') Rough woolen overblouse or jacket, similar to *COATS AND JACKETS: PEA JACKET*.

varsity jacket See *COATS AND JACKETS: BASEBALL JACKET*.

vinyl raincoat (vine'-ul) **1.** Waterproof raincoat usually made of heavy clear vinyl. Special attention must be paid to sewing the seams, or it will tear where the sewing machine perforates it. **2.** Fabric given a vinyl finish and used to make a raincoat.

waistcoat paletot (pal-ah-tow' or pal-tow') Woman's knee-length coat of 1884 in tailored style buttoned only at neckline, made with hip-length waistcoat showing in front.

walking coat Knee-length single-breasted coat with a notched collar.

wamus (wah'-muss) Heavy outdoor jacket or cardigan of coarse cloth, buttoned at collar and wrists worn in the United States. Also spelled *wammus*, *wampus*.

watch coat Short, heavy, windproof coat worn by sailors on watch. Also see *COATS AND JACKETS: PEA COAT*.

Watteau coat (wat-toe') Lady's princess-style coat of the 1890s made in fitted unbuttoned style with waistcoat showing in front. Usually had a standing collar, wide lapels, and turned-back cuffs with characteristic single or double box pleat in center back. *Der.* Named for the artist Antoine Watteau (1684–1721).

Wellesley wrapper Above-the-knee double-breasted sack-like coat, worn in 1853 by men and fastened in front with *BRANDENBURGS* (see *CLOSURES: FROGS*).

western jacket Jacket like those worn by American cowboys, made of buckskin or fabric with breast pockets, a yoke, and sometimes having a fringe of leather on yoke, sleeves, and hem.

windbreaker/Windbreaker® Formerly a trademark and continues in common usage for a warm lightweight nylon jacket zipped up

front with close-fitting waistband and cuffs, often made with attached hood. Trademark now applies to a wide variety of apparel items.

wraparound coat Woman's coat made without buttons or fasteners in front and held closed with long self-fabric sash. Also called *wrap coat*.

wrapper **1.** Man's loose overcoat, worn in 1840s, either single- or double-breasted. Sometimes used to indicate a *CHESTERFIELD* (see under *COATS AND JACKETS*). **2.** In the 1850s, man's loose thigh-length overcoat, with shawl collar, that wrapped in front, sometimes worn with evening dress.

wrap-rascal Man's loose-fitting overcoat made of heavy fabric, worn from about 1738 to 1850. The 19th-c. type usually referred to coats worn when traveling on the outside of a coach. Also worn in the country.

yachting coat Woman's hip-length, square-cut jacket worn from 1860s to 1880s. Made single- or double-breasted with large buttons and loose sleeves. Also called *short paletot*. See *COATS AND JACKETS: PALETOT*.

yachting jacket Double-breasted four-button man's jacket with lapels and collar, usually styled in navy-blue wool with brass buttons. Made similar to U.S. Naval uniforms with black braid instead of gold, and yacht club buttons instead of Navy buttons; worn on board by yacht club members.

Zhivago coat (zhi-vah'go) Mid-calf-length coat, lavishly trimmed with fur at neck, cuffs, and hem, sometimes with frog closing. Inspired by costumes worn in *Dr. Zhivago*, 1965 film of Boris Pasternak's novel about the 1917 Russian Revolution.

zip-off coat Long coat styled to be used in two or three lengths, achieved by placing zippers at mini and midi lengths. When made to have only two lengths, may be called a *duo-length coat*.

Zouave coat (zoo-ahv') Man's cloak of mid-1840s with velvet collar and cuffs and quilted silk lining. Used for riding, walking, or worn to the opera. Same as the *oriental wrapper*. *Der.* Arabic, *Zouaova*, a Kabyle tribe, one of the Berbers, living in Algeria or Tunisia.

108 coats and jackets: Zouave jacket

Zouave jacket (zoo-ahv') **1.** Woman's waist-length, bolero-type jacket fastened at the neck and with curved sides in front. Had three-quarter-length sleeves cut rather full. Showed military influence in the trim inspired by Algerian Zouave troops and an American Northern Troop of the Civil War. Fashionable 1859 to 1870 and revived in the 1890s. **2.** Similar jacket worn by little boys in the 1860s. *Der.* Arabic, *Zouaova*, a Kabyle tribe, one of the Berbers, living in Algeria or Tunisia.



zouave jacket #1

Zouave paletot (zoo-ahv' pal-ah-tow' or pal-tow') Waterproofed llama-wool coat worn by men with or without a suitcoat in 1840s. *Der.* Arabic, *Zouaova*, a Kabyle tribe, one of the Berbers, living in Algeria or Tunisia.

coat-style pajamas See SLEEPWEAR AND LOUNGEWEAR.

coat sweater See SWEATERS.

coattail See COATS AND JACKETS.

cobbler Shoemaker, a term first used in Middle Ages. Also called a *cordwainer*.

cobbler's apron See APRONS.

cobra chain See CHAIN.

cocarde See COCKADE #1.

cock Term used from end of 17th to early 19th c. for turning up a hat brim. Given various names for manner of turn-up. Also see HEADWEAR: COCKED HAT.

cockade **1.** Ornamental rosette or bow of ribbon, usually made flat around a center button. Sometimes worn as a part of a uniform or badge of office, e.g., tricolor cockade of red, white, and blue worn on side of hat as patriotic symbol during French Revolution. Also called *ocarde*. **2.** Feather trimming. See FEATHERS. **3.** See FANS.

cocked hat See HEADWEAR.

cockers See FOOTWEAR.

cock feather See FEATHERS.

cockle See HAIRSTYLES.

cockle hat See HEADWEAR.

cockscorb See COXCOMB.

cocktail Adjective applied to clothing and accessories worn at cocktail parties, social gatherings where various short alcoholic drinks are served before dinner. See COCKTAIL DRESS, APRONS: COCKTAIL APRON, GLOVES AND GLOVE CONSTRUCTION: COCKTAIL GLOVES, and JEWELRY: COCKTAIL RING.

cocktail dress Contemporary term for short evening dress with décolleté neckline made in luxury fabrics. Suitable for formal late-afternoon or cocktail parties; popular in the 1950s.

coconut straw/coco straw Braided straw, usually tan or light brown, made from coconut-palm leaves.

cocoon See COATS AND JACKETS and SLEEPWEAR AND LOUNGEWEAR.

coeurs See FOOTWEAR: COCKERS.

codvec See HEADWEAR: CASTOR.

codpiece **1.** Triangular flap at front of crotch of men's trunk hose large enough for a pocket, frequently padded and decorated, worn during 15th and 16th c. Shown at TRUNK HOSE and DOUBLET. **2.** By early 17th c. term applied to front fastening of BREECHES. Also called a *cod placket*. Compare with BRAYETTE.

cod placket See CODPIECE #2.

Codrington See COATS AND JACKETS.

coffer headdress See HEADWEAR.

coggers See FOOTWEAR: COCKERS.

coif (kwaf) **1.** Short for coiffure. French, "hair-style." See HAIRSTYLES. **2.** (verb) To style or dress the hair. **3.** See HEADWEAR.

coiffe de mailles See ARMOR.

coiffette See ARMOR.

coiffure (kwa'-fure) French term used in English since 18th c. for hairdressing or arrangement of hair. *Note:* *coiffeur* (m.) (kwa'-fuhr) and *coiffeuse* (f.) (kwa'-fuhz) are the French words for hairdressers.

coiffure à l'Agnès Sorel See HAIRSTYLES.

coiffure à la Grecque See HAIRSTYLES: GREEK COIFFURE.

coiffure à la hérisson See HAIRSTYLES: HÉRISSEON.

coiffure à la indépendance See HAIRSTYLES.

coiffure à la Maintenon See HAIRSTYLES.

coiffure à la mouton See HAIRSTYLES.

coiffure à la Ninon See HAIRSTYLES: NINON COIFFURE.

coiffure à la Sévigné See HAIRSTYLES.

coiffure à la Titus See HAIRSTYLES.

coiffure à la zazzera See HAIRSTYLES.

coiffure à l'enfant See HAIRSTYLES.

coiffure en bouffons See HAIRSTYLES.

coiffure en bourse See HAIRSTYLES and WIGS AND HAIRPIECES: BAGWIG.

coiffure en cadettes See HAIRSTYLES.

coiffure en raquette See HAIRSTYLES.

coiled bracelet See BRACELETS.

coin de feu See COATS AND JACKETS.

coin dot See PRINTS, STRIPES, AND CHECKS: DOTS.

coin necklace See JEWELRY.

coin purse See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES: CHANGE PURSE.

coin silver Strong silver alloy, containing 90% silver and 10% copper; used for jewelry. The only silver available to early American Colonists, obtained by melting down silver coins.

cointise (kwan-teez') **1.** Cut-out decoration used on the overgarment, worn from 13th and 14th c., also the garment itself. **2.** See ARMOR.

cokers See COCKERS.

Colbert embroidery See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES.

Colbertine lace See LACES.

cold mask See MASKS: HOT MASK.

collar **1.** See introduction to NECKLINES AND COLLARS. **2.** See FOOTWEAR: QUARTER.

collar and cuff set Women's separate collar and cuffs usually made of linen, lace, organdy, or other sheer fabrics—often white, trimmed with lace, insertion, embroidery, or tucks. Popular from early 15th c. until 1930s and used occasionally since.

collar button See CLOSURES: STUD.

collaret **1.** See NECKLINES AND COLLARS. **2.** See ARMOR.

collarette à la Lyon See NECKLINES AND COLLARS: CHERUSSE.

collar necklace See JEWELRY.

collar pin See JEWELRY.

collar stay Narrow strip of plastic or metal inserted in point of man's collar from the underside to ensure a crisp unwrinkled look.

collection Term used by couture, ready-to-wear, or manufacturer's designer for clothing and accessories offered to customers for a specific season.

Originally used only for high-priced couture clothing. Also called **line**.

Colleen Bawn cloak See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS.

collegians See FOOTWEAR: OXONIAN BOOT.

colley-westonward 16th-c. slang meaning "worn awry" or "crooked," usually applied to the MANDILION JACKET (see COATS AND JACKETS), which was worn without putting arms through sleeves and turned sideways so that one sleeve hung in front, the other in back. *Der.* From a Cheshire, England, saying for "anything that goes wrong."

colobium **1.** See UNDERGARMENTS. **2.** See CLERICAL DRESS.

Colonial shoe/pump See FOOTWEAR.

Colonial tongue See FOOTWEAR.

color blocking Use of large geometrical areas of contrasting color in dresses, blouses, jackets. Shown at MONDRIAN DRESS.

color forecasting Predictions of color preferences developed through research carried out by color forecasting companies, textile, and apparel companies.

color-graded glasses See EYEWEAR.

colorway The three or four color choices available of a solid or printed fabric for a garment style produced in more than one color.

columnar heel See FOOTWEAR.

comb **1.** An article—often of tortoise shell, ivory, plastic, wood, or metal—with a row of narrow teeth that is drawn through the hair or beard to arrange or untangle it. **2.** Combs of precious metals or those decorated with jewels are often placed in women's hair to hold it in place and as decorations, especially at sides of head or in back when hair is set in a twist. Earliest combs are from late Stone Age.

combat boot See FOOTWEAR.

combed yarn † Yarn made from short fibers, known in the textile industry as STAPLE FIBERS, that have been subjected to the process of combing. Combing is an optional step in the spinning of yarns in which fibers that have been carded are subjected to further straightening and alignment, formed into a strand of fibers, and given a greater or lesser amount of twist to form them into a yarn. Combed yarns have fewer fibers on

the surface, are smoother, and can be finer yarns than those that have only been carded. See **CARDED YARNS**.

combination last See **FOOTWEAR: LAST**.

combinations See **UNDERWEAR: COMBINATIONS**.

combination tanning See **LEATHERS**.

combing See **COMBED YARN**.

combing jacket See **COATS AND JACKETS**.

comb morion See **ARMOR: MORION**.

comedy mask See **MASKS**.

comfort collar See **NECKLINES AND COLLARS**.

comforter See **SCARVES**.

commander's cap See **HEADWEAR**.

commercial match A color match between components of a style that are provided by a contractor and that is satisfactory to the manufacturer.

Commes des Garçons * See **KAWAKUBO, REI** under **APPENDIX/DESIGNERS**.

commissionaire Middleman who operates in foreign countries buying merchandise for American retailers.

commode See **HEADWEAR: FONTANGE**.

commodore cap See **HEADWEAR**.

commodore dress Dress with nautical braid trim worn by girls and young ladies in early 1890s. Typical dress might have a wide braid trimmed sailor collar and gathered skirt with braid trim near the hem. Usually worn with a flat **SAILOR HAT** or a **COMMODORE HAT**. (See **HEADWEAR**.)

Common sense heel See **FOOTWEAR**.

Communion dress Clothing customarily worn by children when taking their first Communion in the Catholic church. Girls' dress generally consists of a white dress worn with a short white veil. Boys generally wear a white suit. Also see **HEADWEAR: COMMUNION VEIL**.

compact Cosmetic container used to hold powder, rouge, eye shadow, and sometimes lipstick. Made of metal or plastic with mirrored lid.

compass cloak See **CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: FRENCH CLOAK**.

competition stripes See **SHIRTS AND CHECKS, PRINTS, AND STRIPES**.

computer-aided design (CAD) Computer hardware and software systems for designing apparel and implementing their manufacture. This technology can significantly decrease errors and save

time because the effects of changes in design can be seen on the computer screen without making actual samples.

computer-aided design/computer-aided manufacturing (CAD/CAM) The linking of computer systems for creating designs with those for pattern creation, **GRADING**, and **MARKER** in order to coordinate the steps in production.

computer-aided manufacturing (CAM) Computer hardware and software systems that **GRADE** and make **MARKERS** electronically. They may also have the capability to do computer-controlled cutting, use lasers for specialized cutting, and employ robotics in manufacturing. These systems lower the use of manual labor, but because of the initial high capital investment it is generally only large manufacturers that utilize this sophisticated technology to the maximum.

computer dress Dress made from discarded computer chips hooked together, sometimes made in one-shoulder style with asymmetric hemlines. Chips are collected from computers, TVs, and other electronic machines. Dresses sold in 1984 by Panages, from \$2,000 to \$50,000.

computer grading and marker making (CGMM) The computer hardware and software systems that process the pattern grading and marker-making segments of a garment pattern for production.

computer integrated manufacturing (CIM) The production of a finished product by integrating various computer-aided processes (such as CAD, CAM, CGMM) that can link information and equipment throughout the manufacturing process.

computer pattern Sewing pattern developed in 1960s, made to fit the individual. Salesperson in store takes customer's measurements, which are then sent to a pattern company and fed into a computer to produce a custom-cut pattern for garment.

conch (conk or consh). Sheer, gauzelike veil of the late 16th c. extending from shoulder to floor and worn capelike over the shoulders.



conch 16th c.

At the back of the neck, it was attached to a winglike construction that stood up like a high collar behind the head.

concierge See HAIRSTYLES: POMPADOUR.

conductor's cap See HEADWEAR.

coney/cony See FURS.

confidants See HAIRSTYLES.

Congress boot See FOOTWEAR.

Connolly, Sybil * See APPENDIX/DESIGNERS.

considerations See UNDERWEAR: PANNIERS.

consignment Goods stocked by a retailer but not paid for until they are sold. After selling the goods, the retailer pays the person or firm that provided the goods a price agreed-upon at the time of consignment.

constable See CANE.

Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC)

A U.S. federal government agency that oversees product safety and, as part of its responsibilities, monitors flammability regulations for apparel and home furnishings.

continental Adjective applied to garments thought to have originated in one of the countries on the continent of Europe. See CONTINENTAL SUIT, PANTS: CONTINENTAL PANTS, and POCKETS: CONTINENTAL POCKETS.

continental hat See HEADWEAR: COCKED HAT.

continental heel See FOOTWEAR.

continental stitch See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES.

continental suit Man's suit with natural shoulderline, easy fitting jacket, and narrow tapered trousers with no belt. Pockets in trousers are slanted from waistline to side seams. Style originated in Italy in 1950s.

continuous filament yarn † Manufactured yarns made by pushing the spinning fluid through a nozzle, or spinnerette with tiny holes, producing strands of indefinite length. When only one strand is produced, a **monofilament yarn** is formed; when many strands are produced, a **MULTIFILAMENT YARN** is formed.

contour belt See BELTS.

contour bra See UNDERGARMENTS.

contour clutch See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES.

contractor A person or firm that agrees to construct apparel for a manufacturer or retailer.

contractual retailer Retailer that has made contractual arrangements with other retailers, with a manufacturer, or with a wholesaler that may be advantageous in simplifying management and increasing market impact. Examples of contractual arrangements include **FRANCHISES** and **LEASED DEPARTMENTS**.

control Describes garments such as women's girdles, foundations, or pantyhose made with elastomeric yarns (see **ELASTOMER**), which provide support. See **HOSIERY: CONTROL PANTYHOSE**, **UNDERGARMENTS: CONTROL BRIEF**, and **CONTROL PANTS**.

controls In retailing, refers to the methods used by a retailer to monitor business operations and evaluate the effectiveness of merchandising strategies. Also see **MAZUR PLAN**.

convenience goods Products that require relatively little evaluation before their purchase by consumers. Compare with **SHOPPING GOODS** and **SPECIALTY GOODS**.

conversation bonnet See HEADWEAR: POKE BONNET.

converted goods † Textile fabrics processed by a **CONVERTER**.

converter † In the textile industry, a middleman, either a firm or an individual, that takes woven goods in an unfinished state and applies finishing processes (e.g., dyeing, bleaching, waterproofing). After processing, fabrics are suitable for the clothing manufacturer or the yard goods retailer.

convertible Adjective applied to articles of clothing that can be changed in appearance or form by some means. Example: **NECKLINES AND COLLARS: CONVERTIBLE**.

cookie See FOOTWEAR: ARCH CUSHION.

coolie Unskilled Asian laborer who wears distinctive clothing and hat often copied by fashion designers. See **COATS AND JACKETS** and **HEADWEAR**.

coolie hat See HEADWEAR.

coonskin cap See HEADWEAR: DAVY CROCKETT CAP.

co-op advertising A type of advertising strategy whereby companies share the cost of an advertisement that features a number of companies.

cooperative buying office See **ASSOCIATED BUYING OFFICE**.

cope See CLERICAL DRESS and CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS.

copotain See HEADWEAR.

copped shoe See FOOTWEAR: CRAKOW.

copper toe See FOOTWEAR.

copyist Person in the apparel trade who makes replicas of designs—translating a high-priced item to a lower price for a manufacturer.

coq feathers See FEATHERS.

coquette parasol See UMBRELLAS AND PARASOLS: MARQUISE.

coral See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

corazza See SHIRTS.

cord † **1.** The result of twisting together two or more ply yarns. **2.** A surface effect in fabrics that creates ridges running in the lengthwise direction. **3.** See LACE: CORDONNET.

cordé handbag See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES.

corded seam See CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS.

cordelière (kor'-deh-lyaré') Long chain, often of gold, that hung from belt, or girdle, and used to hold a cross, scissors, or other small items worn by women in the 16th c. *Der.* French, "cord or girdle worn by Franciscan friar." Also spelled *cordilier*. Also see CHATELAINE.

cording **1.** Trimming made by inserting a soft ropelike cord into a strip of bias-cut fabric. **2.** Full-rounded trimming used for frogs and loops made by pulling the cord through a seamed tube of BIAS fabric to cover cord completely.

cordonnet See LACE.

cordovan See LEATHERS.

corduroy † (kohr'-duh-roy) Strong durable woven fabric with vertical stripes of cut pile that are formed by an extra system of crosswise yarns. The lengthwise stripes may be made in various widths. Those that are very narrow are called **pinwale**. Usually made of cotton or a cotton blend. The name is thought to derive from the French *corde du roi*, meaning "cord of the king."

corduroy knit † Knitted fabric made with stripes of cut pile in imitation of woven corduroy fabric.

cordwainer Obsolete term for a shoemaker. Originally signified one who worked in cordovan leather (from Cordova, Spain), making shoes and other leather items. See LEATHER: CORDOVAN.

cord yarn † Heavy yarn made by twisting together two or more PLY YARNS. Used in BEN-GALINE, OTTOMAN, and BEDFORD CORD fabrics. Called *cable yarn* in Great Britain.

cordyback hat See HEADWEAR: CAUDEBAC.

core yarn † Yarn made with a heavy center cord around which are wrapped finer yarns of different fibers (e.g., synthetic rubber core wrapped with rayon, cotton, or silk) to improve absorption and feel. Also see ELASTOMERIC YARNS.

cork **1.** Outer bark of oak, *Quercus suber*, grown in Mediterranean countries. Stripped, dried, and boiled to remove sap and tannic acid, then used for fillers in shoes, for dogs, for tropical hats, and for other items that require low weight, resilience, moisture resistance, and insulation against heat. **2.** FOOTWEAR: GALOSH.

corkies See FOOTWEAR: WEDGE HEEL.

cork lace See LACES.

cork rump See UNDERGARMENTS.

corkscrew curl See HAIRSTYLES.

corkscrew wig See WIGS AND HAIRPIECES.

cornalia See VEILS: ORALIA.

corned shoe See FOOTWEAR.

cornercap See ACADEMIC COSTUME: MORTARBOARD.

cornet **1.** See HEADWEAR: HENNIN. **2.** See HEADWEAR. **3.** See SKIRTS.

cornet sleeve See SHOULDERS AND SLEEVES.

cornrows See HAIRSTYLES.

cornu See HEADWEAR: ORALIA.

coronal See CORONET.

coronation braid See BRAIDS.

coronation robes **1.** Three capes worn by British king or queen for coronation at various times during the ceremony: (a) a red cape lined with white, (b) an ecclesiastical COPE (see under CLERICAL DRESS), and (c) a purple velvet cloak trimmed with ermine. **2.** Ermine trimmed robes worn by British nobility attending the coronation with trains of prescribed lengths according to rank. Worn with various types of CORONETS (see HEADWEAR) according to rank. Also called *robes of state*.

coronet See HEADWEAR.

corps (cor) 17th-c. French term for BODICE.

corps à baleine See UNDERGARMENTS: CORPS PIQUÉ #2.

corps piqué See UNDERGARMENTS.

corsage (cor-sahgé') **1.** Small floral arrangement of flowers worn fastened to woman's shoulder or waist, sometimes attached to specially designed wristband and worn on wrist. Worn on special occasions or for formal events. Also see BOSOM FLOWERS. **2.** Term used in the 18th and 19th c. for a woman's bodice.

corsage à la Du Barry See DU BARRY CORSAGE.

corsage à la Maintenon (cor-sahgé' ah lah man-teh'-nah) Fitted bodice of 1830s and 1840s trimmed with bow knots down center front. *Der.* For Marquise de Maintenon, second wife of Louis XIV of France.

corsage en corset (cor-sahgeon corseh) Tight-fitting evening bodice of 1830s and 1840s cut in sections with seams similar to those on a corset.

corse **1.** Tight-fitting underbodice, of metal or leather with center front lacings, worn under tunic by men in 12th and 13th c. **2.** BALDRICK (see under BELTS) for carrying a bugle used by men in 16th c.

corselet **1.** Variant of word CORSET, in 14th and 15th c. **2.** See BELTS. **3.** See ARMOR. **4.** See UNDERGARMENTS. **5.** See PEASANT BODICE. **6.** See WAISTLINES.

corset **1.** See UNDERGARMENTS. **2.** In 11th c. a leather bodice stiffened with wood or metal. **3.** From 16th to 18th c., a stiffened bodice called STAYS (see under UNDERGARMENTS). **4.** Woman's gown laced up back and lined in fur, worn in 14th and 15th c. **5.** Man's surcoat, with or without sleeves, worn in Middle Ages.

corset à la ninon See UNDERGARMENTS.

corset bikini See SWIMWEAR: BIKINI.

corset cover See UNDERGARMENTS: CAMISOLE #1.

corset frock Dress of late 18th c. made with bodice of three gores of white satin in front and lacing in back, similar to a corset.

Corsican tie See TIES: NAPOLEON NECKTIE.

corundum See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

cosmonaut look Jumpsuits and helmets reflecting this look influenced by the attention drawn to the first space astronauts. Featured by St. Laurent in 1963. Started the trend toward pantsuits and jumpsuits for women. *Der.* Russian, "astronaut." Also see LUNAR LOOK.

Cossack Pertaining to garments or styles derived from those worn by people inhabiting the Caucasus, an area between the Black and Caspian Seas. Men were particularly noted for their horsemanship, and wore distinctive dothing See BLOUSES AND TOPS: COSSACK BLOUSE, HEADWEAR: COSSACK FORAGE HAT and COSSACK HAT, NECKLINES AND COLLARS: COSSACK COLLAR, PANTS: COSSACKS, SHIRTS: COSSACK SHIRT, and SLEEPWEAR AND LOUNGEWEAR: COSSACK PAJAMAS.

cosse See FEATHERS.

cost (wholesale cost, or cost to manufacture)

The total cost to manufacture a garment. Derived from the total of the costs of materials, FINDINGS, labor, shipping, packaging, and duty, if applicable.

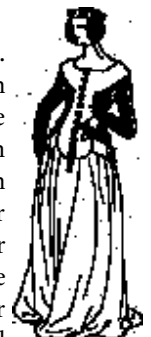
costing marker The layout of the pattern pieces for the PROTOTYPE of a new style in order to ascertain the yardage required.

costume **1.** Dress, coat, or suit with coordinated accessories, an ensemble. **2.** Fancy dress for masquerade parties, Halloween, costume and masked balls. **3.** Dress from a certain period in history, generally referred to as historic costume. **4.** Theatrical dress worn on stage. **5.** Native dress worn for festivals and specific occasions. **6.** In the 1860s term used for outdoor day dress or afternoon dress with a long train.

costume à la constitution Red, white, and blue striped or flowered dress of muslin or lawn worn with a vivid red sash and helmet-shaped cap. Symbolized the tricolor of the French Revolution and was worn by patriots. Also called *dress à la constitution*.

costume jewelry See JEWELRY.

cote (koht) Used in the 13th c. and after for an undertunic worn by men and women during the Middle Ages. Spelled *cotte* in France, this garment was worn over a shirt or chemise and under a *surcote* (ser'-koht), or outer tunic. This word is the source of the modern word *coat*. For women, *kirtle* is sometimes used as a synonym.



cote and sideless surcote 1390

cotehardie/cote-hardy/cote-hardie (coat'-har'-dee) **1.** A variant of the *surcote*, or outer

tunic, for men. The same term seems to have had different applications in different countries. In France, it was identified as either a short garment with long sleeves for outdoor wear, at first simple and later more elegant and fur-trimmed; a gown; or an outer garment open in front and buttoned at the sides. In England, it was a buttoned outer garment fitted through the body to the waist or below where it flared out into a usually knee-length skirt. The sleeves ended at the elbow in front while hanging down at the back in a shorter or longer flap. With time, some versions of the garment became quite decorative. A decorative belt was often worn low on the hip. **2.** Woman's close-fitting dresslike garment of same period, made of rich fabric and laced up back or front. Had long tight sleeves and slits in sides of skirt called fitchets. Said to have been introduced by Anne, wife of Richard II of England.



cotehardie
#1

cothurnus See FOOTWEAR.

cotorinas See VESTS.

cotta See CLERICAL DRESS.

cottage bonnet See HEADWEAR.

cottage cloak See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS.

cottage dress High-waisted straight dress of early 1820s with long apron in front made of same fabric. Necklines varied—some low with FICHU (see SCARVES), others with white collars either trimmed with frills or V-shaped edging. Sleeves were fitted. Hem of skirt was usually decorated with a tubular-shaped trimming stitched at regular intervals to create puffs of fabric.

cottage front Daytime bodice with LACERS in front for decorative effect. Worn over a HABIT SHIRT (see SHIRTS), or CHEMISSETTE (see SCARVES), in early 19th c.

cottage pants See PANTS: COTTAGE PANTS.

cotte See COTE.

cotton † Soft white vegetable fiber from ½" to 2" long that comes from the fluffy boll of the cotton plant. Grown in Egypt, India, China, and southern United States. American cottons include *acala*, *upland*, *peeler*, *pima*, and *Sea Island*. Composed largely of cellulose, cotton fibers are ab-

sorbent, comfortable, and washable; therefore, they are used in a wide variety of clothing items.

cotton batting See BATTING.

Coty American Fashion Critics Awards Annual awards sponsored by Coty, Inc., international cosmetics and perfume company, from 1942 to 1985, given for outstanding fashion design. Judges were magazine and newspaper fashion editors, broadcasters, and fashion retailers. The *Winnie* was awarded each year to a designer who contributed to American design and had significant effect on fashion. Originally awards were given to designers of women's fashions. In 1968 the Coty Menswear Fashion Awards were established. A designer receiving a *Winnie* or Menswear Award three times was accepted into the *Hall of Fame*.

couched embroidery See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES.

couching stitch See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES.

couel **1.** See HEADWEAR. **2.** Synonym for COWL (see NECKLINES AND COLLARS) in England.

Council of Fashion Designers of America A nonprofit organization with a membership of the foremost American designers, founded in 1962 with Norman Norell as the first president. Membership is by invitation only. Accomplishments include: (a) recognition for American designers both here and abroad; (b) created the National Endowment for the arts with recognition of fashion as an art form; (c) presents costume exhibitions annually; (d) hosts the "party of the year" at the Metropolitan Museum of Art in New York City; (e) contributes annually since 1963 to the Costume Institute of the Metropolitan Museum; (f) supports recognized costume institutes throughout the country, including the costume wing of the Smithsonian; (g) was instrumental in founding the Fashion Institute of Technology in New York City. Since 1985 an annual "awards evening" is given to honor individuals who have made an outstanding contribution to fashion and fashion journalism. Also abbreviated to CFDA.

counted cross-stitch embroidery See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES.

counted thread embroidery See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES.

countenance See COUTENANCE.

counter See FOOTWEAR.

counter book See PATTERN BOOK.

counterfeit goods Unauthorized illegal copies of goods with registered tradenames, trademarks, or logos.

counter fillet See HEADWEAR.

counter sample See SEW BY.

countertop display Merchandise shelf or tabletop displays that allow customers to touch and self-select products.

country-western look 1. Look initiated by country-western musicians at the Grand Ole Opry® in Nashville, Tennessee, that ranges from overalls, straw hats, and gingham dresses to ultra dressy rhinestone and sequin-studded western garb as displayed by Dolly Parton, Barbara Mandrell, and Kenny Rogers. *Der.* From style of music. See WESTERN LOOK for individual items. 2. The costumes worn by square dancers in the rural United States that feature women in dresses and skirts (sometimes gingham) with many petticoats, and men in western pants, plaid or fringed shirts, and neckerchiefs (e.g., as seen on characters in the musical *Oklahoma*). *Der.* Type of dancing originating in rural United States, usually done to the music of a fiddler.

coureur See COATS AND JACKETS.

courier bag See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES: MESSENGER BAG.

Courrèges boot See FOOTWEAR.

Courrèges hat See HEADWEAR.

Courrèges fashions/Courrèges look (coor-rej) Clothes and accessories introduced by Paris designer André Courrèges (see APPENDIX/DESIGNERS) that included above-the-knee skirts worn with white calf-length boots. Cut of dress or skirt had hard geometric lines, standing away from the body in A-line shape in fall of 1963. The next year his whole collection was done in shorter-length skirts. Responsible for starting the general trend in the United States toward shorter-length skirts and wearing of boots; however, this trend actually originated with the MOD and CARNABY LOOKS.

Courrèges flower sock See HOSIERY: KNEE-HI SOCK.

Courrèges glasses See EYEWEAR.

courrier dummies See MODEL DOLLS.

course See KNIT.

court dress Costume and items of apparel required to be worn for daily functions and ceremonial occasions in the presence of ruling monarchs. Also see CORONATION ROBES and COURT HABIT.

courtepye/courtepy (kor'-tay-pih) Very short overgarment worn in 14th and 15th c. similar to surcoat. Made in a circle with round neckline, high collar, and slashed at the sides. Frequently PARTI-COLORED or embroidered with gems.

court habit Term for men's clothing worn only at French court in 17th and 18th c. Called **grand habit** for women.

court plasters See PATCHES.

court shoe See FOOTWEAR.

court tie See FOOTWEAR.

coutenance/countenance Small muff carried in late 16th and early 17th c.

coutes See ARMOR.

couture (koo'-ture) French term for the business in which original apparel designs are created by designers and the items are manufactured in the couture house using exceptionally fine sewing and tailoring and expensive fabrics. Also see HAUTE COUTURE.

Couture Group, New York See NEW YORK COUTURE BUSINESS COUNCIL, INC.

couture lace See LACES.

couturier (ko-tour'-ee-ay) French term for male designer or proprietor of a couture house.

couturière (ko-tour'-ee-air) French term for female designer or proprietor of a couture house.

coverall One-piece jumpsuit worn over other clothes by mechanics and other workmen. Originally worn by gas station attendants in the 1920s. Restyled and fashionable for sportswear from the late 1960s on.

coverchief See HEADWEAR.



coverall 1942

covered button See CLOSURES.

covered heel See FOOTWEAR.

covered placket See CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS.

covered yarn See CORE YARN.

covered zipper See CLOSURES.

covert cloth † **1.** An extremely firm durable twill weave fabric with a characteristic mottled look achieved by twisting lengthwise yarns spun from two strands—one dark and the other light. Crosswise yarns are the same or of a dark color. Used for men's and women's suits and coats. **2.** Imitated in all cotton, covert is used for work clothes, caps, uniforms, and trousers.

cover-up See ACTIVEWEAR: BEACH WRAP-UP.

cowboy/cowgirl Term originally used for a man or woman in the western United States who herds or tends cattle, usually going about on horseback. In fashion, may be used as an adjective to describe apparel that is derived from styles associated with cowboys or cowgirls. See BELTS: COWBOY BELT, FOOTWEAR: COWBOY BOOT, HEADWEAR: COWBOY HAT, and SHIRTS: COWBOY SHIRT.

cowboy suit Child's suit worn when playing, an imitation of the regular cowboy's costume. Consists of a shirt, pants, leather bolero, and sometimes CHAPS. Gun belt and a wide-brimmed cowboy hat with chin cord are worn and toy guns are carried. The girl's costume is called a cowgirl's suit and sometimes has a short fringed skirt.

cowhide See LEATHERS: CATTLEHIDE.

Cowichan sweater See SWEATERS.

cowl See NECKLINES AND COLLARS.

cowpunk An uncoordinated medley of PUNK and WESTERN LOOKS appearing in Los Angeles in 1986. Style includes western fringed jackets or leather jackets worn over miniskirts, chain jewelry, three western belts worn at same time, Boy George hats and hairstyles, ragged-looking shirts, a ll type of hairstyles including spiky, mini braids, mohawk, and Indian braids. *Der.* Combination of cowgirl and punk looks.

coxcomb/cockscorn **1.** See HAIRSTYLES. **2.** See HEADWEAR. **3.** See DANDY.

C.P.O. jacket/shirt See SHIRTS.

CPSC See CONSUMER PRODUCT SAFETY COMMISSION.

crab-back bathing suit See SWIMWEAR.

Crafted with Pride in the U.S.A. Council Organization of textile and apparel industry firms (formed 1984) that promotes domestically manufactured textiles and apparel.

Cra hay, Jules-François * See APPENDIX/DESIGNERS.

crakow/crakowe/cracow See FOOTWEAR.

crampons See FOOTWEAR.

crants See HEADWEAR.

crapaud See WIGS AND HAIRPIECES: BAGWIG.

crape See CREPE #2.

crash † Coarse, loosely woven fabric made in a variety of weights with irregular yarns giving it an uneven texture. Usually made in plain weaves of cotton, cotton blends, or linen.

craunce See HEADWEAR: CRANTS.

cravat See TIES.

cravate cocodes See TIES.

cravat strings See TIES.

crawcaw See FOOTWEAR: CRAKOW.

crawlers See PANTS.

crease resistance † The ability of a fabric to recover from wrinkling. Manufactured synthetic fabrics usually have higher wrinkle recovery than natural fiber fabrics, but special finishes can be applied to natural and regenerated fiber fabrics to aid wrinkle recovery.

Creed, Charles * See APPENDIX/DESIGNERS.

creedmore See FOOTWEAR.

creel backpack See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES.

creepalngset Infant's or toddler's two-piece suit usually consisting of a knit shirt with overall-type pants. Also called CRAWLERS (see under PANTS).

creepers **1.** See PANTS: CRAWLERS. **2.** See FOOTWEAR.

creeping apron Infant's garment of early 1900s cut long and gathered at hem into a band through which a cord was drawn. Could be pushed up above knees for a romper effect.

Cremona cravat See TIES.

crepe † (krape) **1.** A general classification of fabrics made from almost any fiber and characterized by a broad range of crinkled or grained surface effects. **2.** In the 18th and 19th c. a heavy crepe fabric dyed black and worn for mourning. Often spelled **crape**.

crepe-back satin † (krape) Lightweight fabric with a smooth, lustrous, shiny finish on the face and a dull crepe appearance on the back. May be used with either side as the exterior. Made in a satin weave with silk, rayon, or manufactured fiber for the lengthwise yarns, and a crepe twist crosswise yarn. The fabric has twice as many lengthwise as crosswise yarns. Used for dresses, blouses, and lingerie. Also called *satin-back* and sometimes called *satin-facial crepe*.

crepe de chine † (krepp deh sheen) **1.** Fine, lightweight silk fabric with a crepe texture that is made by using highly twisted yarns in the crosswise direction and more lengthwise than crosswise yarns. It is piece-dyed or printed and used for dresses and blouses. **2.** Crepe-textured fabric made with silk lengthwise yarns and worsted crepe-twisted crosswise yarns. *Der.* French, “crepe of China.”

crepe georgette See GEORGETTE.

crepe-soled shoes See FOOTWEAR.

crepe yarn † (krape) Yarn that is given a high twist during spinning. The yarn is stiff, wiry, and contracts during finishing giving pebbled surface to fabrics.

crepida See FOOTWEAR: KREPIS.

cresecent Motif copied from shape of moon in its first quarter. Also called a *lunette*. See FOOTWEAR: CRESCENT TOE.

Crete lace See LACES.

crève-cœur See HEADWEAR.

crevés (krev-ay) See SLASHING.

crew cut See HAIRSTYLES.

crew neckline See NECKLINES AND COLLARS.

crew-neck shirt See SHIRTS.

crew-neck sweater See SWEATERS.

crew socks See HOSIERY.

crewel work See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES.

crewel yarn † Two-ply, loosely twisted, fine worsted yarn used for embroidery.

criardes See UNDERGARMENTS.

crimmer See FURS: LAMB.

crimp/crimping **1.** † *n.* Natural or machine-made bending or waviness in a fiber making yarn resilient, less shiny, bulkier, and suitable for knitting. **2.** *v.* To curl the hair with a hot iron.

3. *v.* To shape leather by a machine that uses heat and pressure.

crin French for horsehair. See BRAIDS: HORSE-HAIR BRAID.

criniere (cran-yere') See WIGS AND HAIRPIECES.

crinkle crepe Same as PLISSÉ.

crinolette See UNDERGARMENTS.

crinoline † (krin'-uh-lyn) **1.** Heavily sized (see SIZING), open weave cotton fabric. **2.** See UNDERGARMENTS: CRINOLINE.

crinoline and tournure See UNDERGARMENTS: BUSTLE.

crinoline era (krin'-uh-lyn) Used by costume historians to designate the period from 1850 to 1870 when crinoline petticoats (see UNDERGARMENTS: CRINOLINE) or hoops (see UNDERGARMENTS: HOOPS) were used to support full skirts.

crisp **1.** See VEILS. **2.** See HAIRSTYLES.

crispin See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS.

crispine See HEADWEAR.

crispinette See HEADWEAR: CRISPINE.

crochet (kro-shay') **1.** † Fabric made from a continuous series of loops of yarn made with a single hooked needle. Originally developed in the 16th c. as an inexpensive method of creating a lacelike fabric. Modern textile machinery can create fabrics that have the appearance of crochet. **2.** Adjective used to describe apparel made by crocheting. See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: CROCHETED SHAWL, CLOSURES: CROCHETED BUTTON, and HEADWEAR: CROCHETED HAT. **3.** Term used from 14th to 17th c. for a hook or fastener, e.g., a hook attached at woman's waist for suspending a pomander, or a fastener on a shoe.

crochets and loops See CLOSURES: HOOKS AND EYES.

crocodile See LEATHERS.

Cromwell Adjective used in the 18th c. to describe clothing inspired by or derived from clothing items worn at the time Oliver Cromwell ruled as Lord Protector of England, 1653 to 1658. See NECKLINES AND COLLARS: CROMWELL COLLAR and FOOTWEAR: CROMWELL SHOES.

Cromwell collar See NECKLINES AND COLLARS.

Cromwell shoe See FOOTWEAR.

crooked shoe See FOOTWEAR.

crop-doublet See DOUBLET.

cropped Term denoting shortened, or cutoff, when referring to clothing or hair. See BLOUSES AND TOPS: CROPPED TOP and PANTS: CROPPED PANTS.

cropping See SHEARING.

croquet boot See FOOTWEAR.

croquis (kro'-key) A French term used in fashion illustration that refers to a rough sketch of a figure used as a base on which to show garment design ideas. Also called a *lay figure*.

cross 1. A depiction, stylized or realistic, of an instrument used by Romans for executing individuals. An actual cross would have been made from an upright post of wood with a cross piece near the top, a form that is known as a



Latin cross

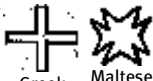
Latin cross. Crosses have been worn by Christians as a symbol of their religious belief from the early days of Christianity and as a badge on the clothing worn by Crusaders during the Middle Ages. Different representations of crosses in badges, jewelry, or as motifs of various kinds have developed and have been given such names as (1) **ansate cross** See

ANKH. (2) **Eastern Orthodox cross** With two cross pieces more than half way up the central post and a diagonal cross piece a short distance from the bottom.



Eastern Orthodox cross

(3) **Greek cross** With the cross piece the same length as the vertical piece and located at its center.



Greek cross



Maltese cross

(4) **Maltese cross** With four arms of equal length that are shaped like arrowheads decreasing in size as they approach the center. (5) **St. Andrew's cross** With diagonal arms, like



St. Andrew's cross

an X. (6) **tau cross** With the cross piece at the top of the post, like the Greek letter *tau*. 2. European term for **BIAS**, or diagonal cut—called fabric cut “on the cross.”

cross-boarded See LEATHERS.

cross body bag See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES.

crosscloth See HEADWEAR.

crosses See FURS.

cross-country skiing See PANTS: KNICKERS #1.

cross fox See FURS.

cross gaitering See CROSS GARTERING.

cross gartering 1. Binding or holding the leg-coverings, *broc* of Anglo-Saxon, or *braies*, of the

French (see **BRAIES**), close to the leg by criss-crossing strips of leather around legs on top of pants. 2. Used from mid-16th to early 17th c. to describe the style of gartering hose by using a ribbon around leg below the knee, crossing in back, and tying with bow above knee in front or at



side of knee when stockings were worn over **CANIONS.**

cross girdling Style of wearing the girdle, or sash, crossed at the chest and then wrapped around the waist by ancient Greeks. Also see **BELTS: GREEK BELT.**

crossover bra See UNDERGARMENTS.

crossover collar See NECKLINES AND COLLARS.

cross over thong sandals See FOOTWEAR: **THONG #3.**

cross Persian lamb See FURS: LAMB.

cross stone See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS: **FAIRY STONE.**

cross-stitch See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES.

crotch Place in a garment where the legs meet. British term is *crutch*.

crown 1. See HEADWEAR. 2. See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

crown hats See HEADWEAR.

crown sable See FURS: SABLE.

cruches See HAIRSTYLES.

crusader hood See HEADWEAR.

crusader's cross See JEWELRY.

crush hat See HEADWEAR: **CHAPEAU CLAQUE.**

crushed leather See LEATHERS.

crusher hat See HEADWEAR.

crutch British term for **CROTCH.**

crypto crystalline See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

crystal See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

crystal bracelet See JEWELRY.

crystalline structure See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

crystal pleats See CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS.

cuaran See FOOTWEAR.

Cuban heel See FOOTWEAR.

Cubavera jacket See COATS AND JACKETS.

cube heel See FOOTWEAR.

Cubic Zirconia® See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

cue See HAIRSTYLES.

cue peruke See WIGS AND HAIRPIECES.

cuff bracelet See JEWELRY.

cuff button See CLOSURES.

cuffed Describes the bottom edge of a garment that has been given a wide hem that has been turned back to form a cuff. Examples of garments that are often cuffed are shorts and pants.

cuffed trousers See PANTS: PRE-CUFFED TROUSERS.

cuff link See JEWELRY.

CUFFS

cuff 1. Finish for a sleeve consisting of a separate sewed-on piece or a turned-back extension of a sleeve. 2. The turned-over or stitched-on piece at the top of a glove. 3. A turned-back piece at the hem of trousers; a trousercuff. 4. A turned-over or stitched-down band at the top of a boot. 5. See JEWELRY.

band cuff Simplest type of cuff made from a separate piece of fabric and applied to the bottom of a sleeve. The band is cut from a straight piece of fabric. Such cuffs are made in varying widths and sometimes may have attached ruffles or pieces of elastic pulled through the bands.

barrel cuff See CUFFS: SINGLE CUFF.

boot cuff Large turned back cuff, reaching nearly to elbow. Popular for men's coats from 1727 to about 1740, used on a BOOT SLEEVE (see under SHOULDERS AND SLEEVES).

detachable cuff Cuff cut out of an additional piece of fabric rather than being an extension of the sleeve and which may be taken off, washed, and reattached to the sleeve.

double cuff See CUFFS: FRENCH CUFF.

elbow cuff Turned-back cuff attached to woman's elbow-length sleeves in first half of 18th c.—wide on outside of arm and fitting more closely at elbow.

French cuff Large band cuff that doubles back on itself and is usually fastened with a cuff link. Also called *double cuff*.



French cuff

fringed cuff Leather band at the wrist that has long hanging fringe at the end. A fashion innovation of the late 1960s.

gauntlet cuff Wide turned-back cuff that slants away from the arm, flaring wide at top and tapering to wrist.



gauntlet cuff

hand fall/hand cuff Term for lace-trimmed, turned-back, flared starched cuff frequently made double. Worn by men and women in 17th c. with FALLING BAND, FALLING RUFF, and STANDING BAND (see under NECKLINES AND COLLARS).

hounds' ears Large turned-back cuffs with rounded corners used on men's coats from 1660s to 1680s.

knit cuff Cuffs made with a rib knit stitch that gives a tight fit but is elastic enough to slip over hand easily.

mariner's cuff Man's coat cuff, worn in second half of 18th c., consisting of a small turned-back cuff decorated on outside with a curved flap, similar to a pocket flap, and three or four buttons that matched those of the coat.

mousquetaire cuff (moose-ke'-tare) 1. Deep, wide cuff flaring above the wrist, used on men's coats in early 1873. 2. Sleeve of mousquetaire type worn in late 1880s with flaring top and cuff sometimes trimmed with vandykes (see VANDYKING). *Der.* From uniform of French musketeers or royal bodyguards of Louis XIII in 17th c.

parament (pa-ra'-ment) Ornamental cuff at wrist, turned up over sleeve and stitched. Also spelled *parement*.



pendant cuff

pendant cuff Cuff that hangs down from the sleeve.

roll-up cuff Extension of the sleeve that is folded over several times to form a cuff. Sometimes fastened with a tab. See SHOULDERS AND SLEEVES: BUTTON-TAB SLEEVE.



roll-up cuff

single cuff Band cuff that, in contrast to a French cuff, has no section doubled back on itself.

120 cuffs: turned-back cuff

This cuff is stitched to the sleeve and usually closes with one or more buttons.

turned-back cuff Turned-back extension of the sleeve. Sleeve is cut longer and a section is turned up to form a cuff.



cuff string See CLOSURES.

cuff-top girdle See UNDERGARMENTS: GIRDLES.

cuirass (kwe-rass') **1.** See ARMOR. **2.** Plain, dose-fitting waist worn by women in early 1900s. *Der.* French, *cuirasse*, "breastplate."

cuirass bodice/cuirasse bodice (kwe-rass')

Extremely tight, boned women's daytime bodice of mid-1870s extending down over hips to mold the body. Frequently made in fabric different from the dress.

cuirasse tunic/cuirasse tunic (kwe-rass') Tight-fitting tunic skirt worn with the CUIRASS BODICE by women in mid-1870s.



cuir savage See LEATHER LOOK AND WET LOOK.

cuisse See ARMOR.

cullet **1.** See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS. **2.** See ARMOR.

culotte dress (ku-lot') Dress that combines pants and blouse into one garment, usually without a waistline seam, popular in 1967 and after. Also called a *pantdress*.

culottes (ku-lotz') **1.** Garment that hangs like a skirt, but is actually pants (i.e., a divided skirt). *Der.* French, "breeches, trousers, tights, and knickers." When used as an adjective, indicates a garment with culotte-type construction. See CULOTTE DRESS, SLEEPWEAR AND LOUNGEWEAR: CULOTTE PAJAMAS, SKIRTS: CULOTTES, and UNDERGARMENTS: CULOTTE SLIP. **3.** Term first used for tight, below-the-knee pants worn during reign of Henry III of France, 1574–1589. **4.** Synonym for PETTICOAT BREECHES.

cultured pearl See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

Cumberland corset See UNDERGARMENTS: A POLLO CORSET.

Cumberland hat See HEADWEAR.

cummerbund See BELTS.

Cummings, Angela * See APPENDIX/DESIGNERS.

cupola coat See UNDERGARMENTS: BELL HOOP.

cuprammonium rayon † Cellulosic fiber regenerated from wood pulp or from cotton fibers too short to spin into yarns. This fiber is no longer manufactured in the United States because it produces high levels of water pollution, but is manufactured abroad and may be found in imported goods. Used in women's dresses, blouses, and scarves.

curch See HEADWEAR.

curls See HAIRSTYLES.

curlyhead See HAIRSTYLES.

curricl coat See COATS AND JACKETS.

curricl dress (kur'-ee-kul) Women's thigh-length, short-sleeved, open-front tunic usually of net worn from 1794 to 1803 over a full-length dress.

curtain drapery American term for HIP BAGS.

curtains See HEADWEAR: LAMBALLE BONNET.

cushion cut See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

cushionet See UNDERWEAR.

cushion headdress See HEADWEAR.

cushion pad See UNDERGARMENTS: BUSTLE.

cushion sole **1.** See FOOTWEAR. **2.** See HOSIERY.

cushion-style embroidery See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES: BERLIN WORK.

custom designer Designer who creates an original garment that is executed by skilled seamstresses who drape the fabric on a dress form conforming to the customer's special measurements. Clothes produced by such designers are known as *custom-made* or *made-to-measure*.

custom-made Adjective describing garments made by tailor or couture house for an individual customer. The correct size is achieved either by fitting on a dress form adjusted to the customer's measurements or by several personal fittings.

customs broker A U.S. agent licensed by the Customs Office to assist apparel manufacturers in gaining clearance through customs for the importation of goods produced OFFSHORE.

cutaway coat/jacket See COATS AND JACKETS.

cutaway frock See COATS AND JACKETS.

cutaway sack See COATS AND JACKETS.

cut-finger gloves See GLOVES AND GLOVE CONSTRUCTION.

cut, make and trim (CMT) Apparel contractor that performs the operations necessary to cut, make, and trim garments for an apparel manufacturer.

cut-offs See SHORTS.

cutout dress Any dress with cutout portions revealing the body. May have enlarged armholes or be cut out at the midriff, hips, or back. An innovation of the 1960s.

cutouts Ornamental holes of different sizes and shapes cut from apparel. See SWIMWEAR: CUT-OUT SWIMSUIT, FOOTWEAR: CUTOUTS, GLOVES AND GLOVE CONSTRUCTIONS: ACTION GLOVES.

cut-steel beads See JEWELRY.

cut-steel buckle See CLOSURES.

cutter Garment-production term for the person who cuts the fabric with an electric knife.

cutting-up trade Jargon used by textile industry for clothing manufacturers.

cut-up trade Manufacturers who make belts that are added to pants, skirts, and dresses by apparel manufacturers.

cut velvet A fabric that has a fairly complex woven pattern consisting of velvet figures on a background of a relatively sheer fabric. A very decorative fabric, it is used for women's apparel, especially dressy clothing.

cut wig See WIGS AND HAIRPIECES.

cut work/cut-work **1.** See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES. **2.** Used in mid-14th through 15th c. to refer to DAGGING, or a dagged border of a garment. Motifs such as leaves, flames, and scallops were used.

cyberpunk See PUNK LOOK.

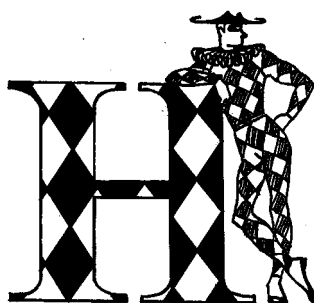
cyclas **1.** Sleeveless outer tunic that apparently began as a garment worn over armor in early 14th c.—extending to waist in front and to knee in back—slashed up sides and then laced. When it became part of civilian clothing, it appears to have been the same as the SURCOTE. Also spelled *ciclaton*, *cinglaton*. Shown at COTE. **2.** Wrapped garment similar to a toga that was worn in ancient Rome. **3.** Rich elaborate overgarment, sometimes fur- or silk-lined, made of a large piece of cloth with round opening for head. Worn in medieval times on ceremonial occasions by both men and women (e.g., at the coronation of Henry III of England in the 13th c.).

cycle jacket See COATS AND JACKETS: MOTORCYCLE JACKET.

cycling suit/cycling costume See ACTIVEWEAR.

cymophane See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

Czechoslovakian embroidery See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES.



H

haberdashery A store that sells men's apparel and accessories.

habiliment (heh-bil'-eh ment) Synonym for clothing, garb, attire, or dress. *Der.* French, *habillement*, "clothing."

habit Characteristic apparel of a calling, rank, or function (e.g., clerical clothes, court dress or riding habit).

habit d'escalier (ah-beet' des-kahl'-yay) Late 18th and early 19th c. evening dress made with an overtunic or HALF ROBE. The short sleeves were slit open and trimmed with ribbons tied in ladderlike fashion.

habit-redingote (red'-ing-gote) Woman's dress of 1879 made in princess style with front closed from neck to knees. Lower front of skirt was cut away and rounded to reveal the underskirt.

habit shirt See SHIRTS.

hacking Riding for pleasure, as opposed to riding to hounds, for which a specific type of clothing is worn. Sometimes used as an adjective to describe clothing used for riding. See COATS AND JACKETS: HACKING JACKET, POCKETS: HACKING POCKET, and SCARVES: HACKING SCARF.

hackle See FEATHERS.


haincelin See HOUPPELANDE.

HAIR ACCESSORIES

anadem/anademe (ahn'-ah-dem) Wreath or garland of leaves or flowers, worn on hair by women in late 16th and early 17th c.

barrette (ba-ret') Clip worn in the hair. May be small and worn one on either side of head,


or larger and worn in back or at nape of the neck. Made of plastic, metal, wood or other materials in various shapes (e.g., bar or bow knot). *Der.* French, diminutive of *barre*, "bar." Also spelled *barret*, *barette*.


bobby pin Small flexible piece of metal bent in half with prongs held together by the spring of the metal; worn to keep hair in place or to set hair in pin curls.  *bobby pin*
See HAIRSTYLES: PIN CURLS #2.

diadem comb (dye'-ah-dem) High, wide, curved comb with ornamental top worn for evening by women in the 1830s.

duchess Knot or bow of ribbon worn as part of the FONTANGE hairstyle (see under HEADWEAR) in the late 17th c.

hairband 1. From 15th to 17th c. a ribbon for the hair or fillet. See HEADWEAR: FILLET #2.
2. See HEADWEAR: HEADBAND #1 and #2.

hairpin A two-pronged device usually of plastic or metal. Used to hold the hair in place, especially hair styled in a bun, knot, updo, or French twist. The classic hairpin is a wire bent double with crimps halfway down each side to give flexibility. Pins of very fine wire tinted to match hair are called **invisible hairpins**. Decorated hairpins are worn as jewelry and made of exotic materials or jeweled. Also see HAIR ACCESSORIES: BOBBY PIN.  *hairpin*

hair sticks Long stiletto-like pieces of wood, plastic, or metal worn for dec-  *hair sticks*

orative effect. Usually thrust through hair knotted at the back of the head.

papillote comb (pahp'-ee-laut) Decorative tortoise shell comb, 3"-4" long, used on either side of head to puff out hair by women in late 1820s. *Der.* French, *papilloter*, "to flutter," and *papillon*, "butterfly."

peigne Josephine (pahn) Woman's high comb, ornamented with small gilt balls. Worn at the back of head for evening in 1842.

pompon Hair or cap ornament composed of feathers, tinsel, butterflies, etc., worn in center part of hair by women from 1740s to 1760s, originally called *pompadour* (pohm'-pah-dure).

rat Sausage-shaped padded roll of nylon mesh (formerly of hair or felt) worn by women under natural hair to create high pompadour effect in early 20th c. and since. Also see HAIRSTYLES: POMPADOUR #1.

roll/rowle 16th and 17th c. term for pad used to raise the front hair up from forehead.

scrunchy Elastic band covered with fabric for confining ponytails.

Spanish comb Comb with ornamental top, sometimes 5" high, worn at crown of head to support a MANTILLA (see under HEADWEAR) or separately for decorative effect.



scrunchy

toque A triangular cushion worn from 1815 to 1820 by women on top of the head to extend the hair.

haircut Trimming and shaping of hair with scissors or razor. See HAIRSTYLES.

hairdo See HAIRSTYLES.

hair fibers † Fibers obtained from the fleece or pelt of an animal.

hair jewelry See JEWELRY.

hairline stripe See PRINTS, STRIPES, AND CHECKS.

hair net See HEADWEAR.

hairpiece See introduction to category WIGS AND HAIRPIECES.

hairpin See HAIR ACCESSORIES.

hairpin lace See LACES.

hair seal See FURS.

hair sticks See HAIR ACCESSORIES.

HAIRSTYLES

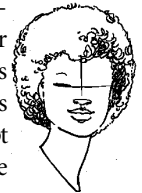
hairstyle Manner in which the hair is worn. Also called *hairdo*, *coiffure*, *wif*. Elaborate hairstyles were popular in ancient times, particularly with the Greeks and Romans. The complexity of hairstyles varied throughout history with some of the most elaborate styles being worn in 18th c. France. First permanent wave was introduced in about 1909. Hair spray came into general use in the 1950s, thus making possible more elaborate hair arrangements. Hairstyles from the 1960s on revived many old styles as well as introducing totally new ones. Styling gel and mousse were in general use by 1980s.

abstract cut Straight short geometric haircut, often asymmetric, with one side of hair cut different from other. Introduced by English hairstylist Vidal Sassoon in mid-1960s.



abstract cut

Afro Style adopted for African-Americans in 1960s in which hair that had a natural tight curl was cut and allowed to assume its natural shape with no attempt made to straighten the hair. The size of the hair style varied with the length of hair. There are many interesting variations of this style.



afro

Afro puffs Afro hairstyle variation made by parting hair in center, pulling to sides, tying near ears, and teasing to form puffs over ears.

aggravators Term used for semicurls near the eye or temple, worn by men from 1830s to 1850s.

Agnès Sorel coiffure Woman's hairstyle with ribbon bands in front and a knot in back; worn from 1830s to 1850s. Named for AGNÈS SOREL.

American Indian braids See HAIRSTYLES: AMERICAN INDIAN HAIRSTYLE.

American Indian hairstyle Hair worn straight and long—below shoulder length—and parted in center. A headband worn low on the brow is usually added. The long hair may be tied in two pony tails, made into braids, or hang

free. When braided called **American Indian braids**.

ape drape See HAIRSTYLES: SHAG.

apollo knot Woman's elaborate evening hairstyle, worn from 1824 to 1832, made with wired loops of false hair, projecting up from crown of head, and finished with decorative comb, flowers, or feathers.

artichoke Short, back-combed layered hair, not too bouffant, popular in early 1960s.

back-combing Hairdressing technique of lifting each strand of hair and combing or brushing lightly toward the scalp to increase bulk; used widely in 1950s and 1960s for BOUFFANT and BEEHIVE hairdos (see under HAIRSTYLES). Also called *teasing*.

bandeau d'amour (ban'-doe dahm-moor') Woman's hairstyle or wig with high slanting and hanging curls worn in 1770s and 1780s.

banging chignon (sheen'-yon) Women's hairstyle of 1770s with wide flat loop of ribbon tied hair, hanging from crown of head to nape of neck.

bangs Hair combed forward over forehead and cut straight across, with the remainder left smooth or waved. Called *fringe* in England.

Bardot hair (bar-doe') Long hair, loosely curled and arranged in tousled disarray with loose tendrils around face. Popular after being seen on French film star Brigitte Bardot in 1959.

barrel curls Full, round large curls frequently grouped at crown or back of the head.

Beatle cut Man's haircut worn full with SIDEBURNS (see under HAIRSTYLES) and well down the neck in back. The first 20th c. style to revive longer hairstyles for men, it was introduced in the 1960s by the Beatles, an avant-garde rock music group from Liverpool, England.



Beatle cut

beehive High, exaggerated bubble hair shape, achieved by back-combing into a rounded dome. First worn by Teddy girls in London in late 1950s, popular until mid-1960s. Also called *bubble bob*.



beehive

Benoiton coiffure (ben-waa'-tone) Women's elaborate coiffure of 1866 with hair parted in

center, smooth on top, chignon and curls in back. Three gold chains were worn over the top of the head and hung in dangling loops under the chin; sometimes garlands of flowers were used instead of chains. *Der.* Named after *La Famille Benoiton*, a play by Victorien Sardou, 1865.

bingle British term for very short haircut. *Der.* Combination of the words BOB and SHINGLE (see under HAIRSTYLES).

bob Short blunt-cut hair, either with bangs or bared forehead, introduced in 1920s by Irene Castle. Also called *Twenties bob*. Also see HAIRSTYLES: BOYISH BOB.

Boldini (bol'-dee-nee) See pompadour #1. Also called *Belle Epoque* (bell eh'-puck), *concierge* (cohn'-see-ehrij), and *onion*. *Der.* For Italian society painter Giovanni Boldini (1845–1931), who often painted women wearing this style.

bouffant (boo-fahnt') Hair exaggeratedly puffed out by means of back-combing (see under HAIRSTYLES) and held there by use of hair spray. Fashionable in early 1960s for medium-length and long hair. *Der.* French, “full” or “puffed.”

bowl crop Men's hairstyle of 15th c. with hair shaved at back and sides, and longer hair hanging from crown of head in round basin-shaped fashion; a fashion revived in 1970 for young men when it was called a BOWL CUT (see under HAIRSTYLES). Also called *pudding-basin cut*.

bowl crop
15th c.

bowl cut Modern version of the BOWL CROP (see under HAIRSTYLES) that looks as if a bowl was placed over the head and then all the hair that can be seen around the edges of the bowl was cut. As a result, hair on top “under the bowl” is fairly long and that below can range in length from being shaved to being cut very short. Variations of this cut include the **dipped mushroom**, or **dipped bowl cut**, that dips several inches lower at the back of the head and the **under cut**, in which the underneath layer of hair under the bowl is cut with clippers for an additional inch or two. As a result, when the head is shaken, the bowl cut returns to its original shape.

boyish bob Woman's extremely short hairstyle, shingled (see HAIRSTYLES: SHINGLE) in back and short on sides. Originally popularized by Beatrice Lillie, British actress in the mid-1920s, and worn since at intervals. Also called *Eton crop*, *gamin*, and *garçon*.



braids Hairstyle made by plaiting three sections of hair together. Braids may be worn hanging down on shoulders, looped up, tied or pinned together, wound around the head in a coronet, or wound in a BUN (see under HAIRSTYLES) at the nape of the neck. Popular style for children in the early 20th c., also very popular in the 1960s and early 1980s.

brush cut See HAIRSTYLES: CREWCUT.

Brutus head/wig Man's own hair worn closely cropped or brown unpowdered wig, both worn disheveled. Popular from about 1790 to 1820 and inspired by the French Revolution.

bubble bob See HAIRSTYLES: BEEHIVE.

bubble curls Very loose curls, back-combed slightly and turned under, appearing on head as series of rounded bumps.

bull head/bull tour Woman's hairstyle with fringe of thick curls across forehead worn in late 17th c. Also called *taure* (tawr). *Der.* French, *taureau*, "bull."



bun Large mass of hair confined neatly at crown of the head or at the nape of the neck.

bush cut See HAIRSTYLES: CREWCUT.

business man's cut Men's moderately short haircut, long enough to be parted or brushed back.

Buster Brown Straight short hairstyle with bangs over forehead. *Der.* Named for early 20th-c. comic-strip character and popular for little boys. Also called **dutch bob**, especially if worn by girls.

bustle curls Long curls worn dangling at back of head.

burr cut See HAIRSTYLES: INDUCTION CUT.

butch cut See HAIRSTYLES: CREWCUT.

buzz cut See HAIRSTYLES: CREWCUT.

cadogan/catagan (ka-dó-gan) **1.** Hairstyle with cluster of ringlets or braids of hair hang-

ing at back of head, tied at nape of neck with wide ribbon. Worn as natural hair or as a wig by men in the 18th c. (see WIGS AND HAIRPIECES: CATOGAN WIG) and by women in 1870s. **2.** Same style worn by women with riding habit in 18th c. Hair usually pulled back, looped up, and tied with a ribbon or the hair itself formed the band. **3.** Hair pulled back with a bow at the nape of neck; a style revived by French couturière Gabrielle Chanel in 1960s. Also see HAIRSTYLES: GEORGE. *Der.* British General, First Earl of Cadogan (1675–1726).



Caesar cut Contemporary men's haircut in the style shown on Roman busts of Julius Caesar. Moderately short, the hair is layered to about one or two inches and brushed forward to a short bang over the forehead.

chignon (sheen'-yon) Large roll of hair twisted into a circle or figure eight on the back of the head or at the nape of the neck, often enclosed in decorative net or held by fancy hairpins. Classic style in 1860s, in 1920s, 1930s, and revived in 1980s. In the late 17th c., was sometimes called a *chou* (choo).



China doll hair Typical Chinese hairstyle with short straight hair, sometimes shingled in back, and bangs at forehead.

chou See HAIRSTYLES: CHIGNON.

classic pull-back Long hair worn combed neatly to the back and tied with a ribbon. In the 1940s worn with a barrette in the back. Also see HAIRSTYLES: GEORGE.

cluster curls Groups of false ringlets or sausage curls, mounted on netting to be pinned in place as part of an elaborate coiffure.

cockle Term used for woman's curl or ringlet in the 17th c.

coif (kwaf) Another name for hairstyle or shortened form of the world coiffure (kwaf-foor').

coiffure See HAIRSTYLES: COIF.

coiffure à l'Agnès Sorel See HAIRSTYLES: AGNES SORÈL COIFFURE.

coiffure à la Grecque See HAIRSTYLES: GREEK COIFFURE.

coiffure à la hérisson See HAIRSTYLES: HÉRISSEMENT.

coiffure à la indépendance French hairstyle with a sailing-ship model perched on top of wavy locks and curls. Worn in 1778 to honor Benjamin Franklin's appearance at the French court for negotiation of a treaty between the U.S. and France. Also called *Triumph of Liberty*.

coiffure à la Maintenon (ah la manta-naw') Woman's coiffure of late 17th and early 18th c. with hair parted in the center, curled, and piled high. *Der.* After the Marquise de Maintenon, second wife of Louis XIV of France.

coiffure à la mouton (ah la moo-ton') Short hairstyle fringed over forehead and crimped on sides. *Der.* French, "sheep."

coiffure à la Ninon See HAIRSTYLES: NINON COIFFURE.

coiffure à la Sévigné (say-veen'-yay) Women's hairstyle of 1650 parted in center, puffed out over the ears, hanging in waves and curls to the shoulders with decorated bow at ear level. *Der.* After Marie, Marquise de Sévigné (1626–1696), a witty correspondent and writer of the time.

coiffure à la Titus See HAIRSTYLES: TITUS.

coiffure à la zazzera (zatz-zeh'-rah) Man's long hairstyle with ends curled under—originally worn by Romans and revived by Venetians in 15th c.

coiffure à l'enfant (ah lon-fon') Woman's hairstyle of 1780s, bobbed short like a child's.

coiffure en bouffons (onbuff-on') Woman's hairstyle with tufts of crimped or curled hair arranged over the temples, and the forehead covered with fringe of hair called *garcette* (gar-cett'). Worn in the Louis XIII period.

coiffure en cadettes (on ka-dey'-net)

1. A hairstyle worn by men and women of Louis XIII period with two long locks—called **moustaches**—falling on either side of face, wound with ribbons, and tied with bows.

2. 17th-c. term for masculine hairstyle with two long locks pulled back and tied with a ribbon.

coiffure en raquette (on ra-ket') Woman's hairstyle with hair brushed up, puffed over the temples, and supported by a wire hoop. Worn in last quarter of 16th c. *Der.* French, "racket."

cold wave See HAIRSTYLES: PERMANENT WAVE.

concierge See HAIRSTYLES: POMPADOUR #1.

confidants Woman's clusters of curls placed over the ears in late 17th c.



confidants
corkscrew curls

corkscrew curls Free hanging curls that appear coiled, frequently lacquered to hold the shape.

cornrows Hair braided in horizontal rows by adding more hair after each plait to the braid. *Der.* From African styles worn by African-Americans in the South in the 19th c., revived in early 1970s by fashionable African-Americans, then copied by others.



cornrow braids

coxcomb/cockscornb Woman's upswept coiffure with hair brushed to the back and pinned to form a vertical row of ringlets down center back.

crève-cœur (krev-kur') Term used at end of 17th c. for curls at nape of woman's neck. *Der.* French, "heartbreaker."

crew cut Man's hair closely cropped so that hair on crown of head stands erect. Front hair is usually a little longer than the back. Originally worn by oarsmen to keep hair



crew cut

out of eyes. Adopted by college men in 1940s and 1950s. At that time it was similar to Army haircuts. Also worn by some women in 1980s and after. When very short and even length all over, called a **butch cut** or a **buzz cut**. Slightly longer versions of the crew cut include the **brush cut**, so named because it stands up like the bristles of a brush, and the **ivy league cut** with hair longer at the front of the head so it can be brushed up or down or parted. Also see HAIRSTYLES: FLATTOP.

crisp 17th-c. term for a curl of hair worn by a woman.

cruches (kroosh) Late 17th-c. term for small curls worn on the forehead.

cue 18th-c. spelling of **QUEUE** (see under **HAIRSTYLES**), the hanging tail of a wig, which first appeared for civilian wear about 1720.

curlyhead See **HAIRSTYLES: POODLE CUT**.

D.A. See **HAIRSTYLES: DUCKTAIL HAIRCUT**.

dipped bowl cut/dipped mushroom cut See **HAIRSTYLES: BOWL CUT**.

double chignon Woman's hairstyle of 1860s with two large rolls of hair, one above the other, at the nape of the neck. Sometimes artificial hair was used.

dreadlocks/Rasta dreadlocks
 Hair arranged in many long hanging twists that was first worn by Rastafarian (a religious sect) reggae musicians from Jamaica. During the 1980s and 1990s some young African-American men and women and some Caucasians adopted the style. Sometimes hair spray is used to make locks stand up on top of head in a tousled mass. *Der.* From the style worn by Rastafarians, a sect from Jamaica, founded in 1930 when Ras Tafari (Haile Selassie) became emperor of Ethiopia.



dreadlocks

ducktail haircut Short hairstyle combed to come to a point at the nape of the neck. Worn by both men and women in the 1950s. Also called *D.A.*, slang for "duck's ass."



ducktail haircut

dutch bob See **BUSTER BROWN HAIRSTYLE**.

earmuffs Hair parted in center, braided on each side, and wound around to form buns over the ears.

Empire coiffure (ohm-peer) Hairstyle worn in 1860s with curls in Greek manner around the face, and a band of narrow ribbon wrapped three times around the head. The back is done in a large **CHIGNON** (see under **HAIRSTYLES**) with narrow ribbon wrapped around it several times, ending with two ribbon streamers down the back.

Empire cone hairstyle Cone-shaped ornament, frequently wound with braids, and placed on crown of head. Hair is pulled back smoothly from the forehead, brought through the cone, and allowed to hang in a ponytail

from top of cone or wound into a cockscomb spike.

Eton crop Variation of **BOYISH BOB** (see under **HAIRSTYLES**) worn in England.

fade A hairstyle popular in the 1990s that originated with young African-American men in which the hair was cut very short on the sides, and long on the top. Sometimes words, names, or designs were shaved on the scalp.

favourites Women's curls worn near the temples from 1690 to about 1720.

feather cut Short lightly curled woman's bob, cut in layers, popular in 1950s and 1960s.

fillet 19th-c. evening hairstyle made by wrapping a satin band, embroidered with pearls, spirally around the head.

finger wave Short hair set in flat waves by means of setting lotion and held until dry by bobby pins, or sometimes by combs. Popular in 1930s and revived in early 1970s. Also called *water wave*.

fishbone braid Hair is braided so that the interlacing of hair down center back looks similar to the spine of a fish with small bones on each side. Also called *French braid*.



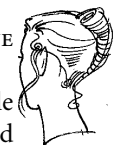
fishbone or French braid

flattop General category of hairstyles, usually for men, in which the top of the hair is cut to a flat surface. Lengths may vary. The head being round, when the hair is cut flat, the scalp on the top of the head is close to the surface, and may be visible. This is known as a **landing strip**. When the hair is cut so short on top that the only remaining hair forms a horseshoe-shaped ridge on the upper sides and across the front, the cut is called a **horseshoe flattop**. In another version called **white walls**, the back and sides are shaved clean.

flip Medium-length woman's hairstyle with hair turned up on ends to form an incomplete curl. Front is often cut in bangs.

French braid See **FISHBONE BRAID**.

French lock See **HAIRSTYLES: LOVE LOCK**.



French roll or French twist

French roll/twist Upswept hairstyle with side and back hair combed and twisted in roll at the center back. Popular in 1940s and classic style since.

fringe See HAIRSTYLES: BANGS.

frisette (frih-zet') **1.** 19th-c. term for crimped bangs of hair, either real or false, worn on the forehead. **2.** In the 1860s a sausage-shaped pad over which back hair was rolled.

frizzy Describing hair in many tight small curls.

gamin (gam'-in) Short boyish cut with shingled back and sides and irregularly cut bangs, popular in 1940s. Also called *urchin* and *garçon*. *Der.* French, "street urchin." Also see HAIRSTYLES: BOYISH BOB.

garcette (gar-cett') See HAIRSTYLES: COIFFURE EN BOUFFONS.

garçon/garçonne (gar-sohn') See HAIRSTYLES: BOYISH BOB.

George Long hair pulled back and secured at the nape of the neck with a twist of hair, ribbon, or scarf. Named for hairstyle as seen in 18th-c. portraits of U.S. President George Washington. *George hairstyle* Classic style for women, adapted by men in early 1970s. Also called a *cadogan* or *catagon*. Also see HAIRSTYLES: CADOGAN #3.



Gibson Girl Hair worn in high puffy POMPADOUR (see under HAIRSTYLES) with small bun on top of head. Fashionable in 19th and early 20th cs., made popular in drawings of Charles Dana Gibson. Revived occasionally.

Grecian curls **1.** Hairstyle of the 1860s with rows of curls hanging down the back from the nape of the neck. Sometimes arranged in two rows, one shorter than the other. **2.** Small curls around the face, copied from Napoleonic era that in turn looked to Greece for inspiration. Used in the 1960s with helmet-style headwear. See HEADWEAR: HELMET.

Greek coiffure Woman's hairstyle of 1860s with center part, hair braided and wrapped around the crown of the head, made to form three hanging loops in back and wound around the loops at nape of neck. Also called *coiffure à la Grecque*. Also see HAIRSTYLES: GRECIAN CURLS.

guiche (gwësh) Few strands of hair made into curl in front of ear. Also called *kiss curl*. When curled back toward the ear instead of forward, called a reverse guiche.

hairdo See introduction to HAIRSTYLES.

hérisson/coiffure à la hérison (air-ee'-sonh)

For women: Late 18th-c. short hairstyle with loose curls in back and frizzed ends at front and sides. **For men:** Same cut in front, but worn with a CADOGAN or PIGTAIL (see under HAIRSTYLE) in back. *Der.* French, "bristly shaggy."

highlights Naturally or artificially produced lighter areas of the hair that provide a contrast with darker areas.

hurluberlu (er-loo-bare'-loo) Woman's hairstyle with short curls all and over and long ringlets in back, first worn by Madame de Montespan about 1671.

induction cut An even length of stubble across the head. This is the cut given to male recruits to the U.S. Armed Services. Also called *burr cut*.

Irene Castle bob Short bob with hair brushed back off the forehead and hanging in loose waves. *Der.* After Irene Castle, the ballroom dancer who made bobbed hair fashionable prior to World War I.

ironed hair Long straight hair, achieved by placing hair on an ironing board and pressing with a warm iron to remove all waves; a fad with young girls in the late 1960s. Now flat irons are used to achieve super-sleek hairstyles.

ivy league cut See HAIRSTYLES: CREW CUT.

jumbo curls Very large curls similar to BARREL CURLS (see under HAIRSTYLES).

kiss curl See HAIRSTYLES: GUICHE.

kolbe (kol-be') Man's hairstyle worn in mid-16th c. with bangs in front and hair the same length at sides and back, usually above the ears. Also called *kolbenschnitt*.

La Belle Époque See HAIRSTYLES: POMPADOUR.

La Goulue See HAIRSTYLES: POMPADOUR.

landing strip See HAIRSTYLES: FLATTOP.

layered cut Hair cut in graduated lengths in a horizontal fashion around the head.

lion's tail A long piece of hair or a switch, hanging down the back, twined with cord to about 6" from the bottom, thus appearing like a lion's tail. Also called *queue de lion*.

love lock/longlock Long lock of curled hair brought forward from nape of neck and worn

hanging over chest, popular from 1590 to 1650s for men and sometimes women. Also called a *Bourbon lock*, *French lock*, *heart breaker*.

Maintenon coiffure (man-té'-non kwa-foor')

Woman's hairstyle of early 1860s with two long hanging curls at either side of face, tiny curls on the forehead, and a *chignon* at the back of the neck. Filmy lace decorated with foliage and flowers went over the crown of the head and hung down each side to shoulders in form of *LAPPETS* (see under *HEADWEAR*). The *MAINTENON TOUPET* (see under *WIGS AND HAIRPIECES*) could be added to secure proper effect of curls on the forehead. *Der.* Named for the *Marquise de Maintenon*, mistress and second wife of Louis XIV of France.

Mandinko Exaggerated *MOHAWK*-type hairstyle (see under *HAIRSTYLES*) with sideburns connected to beard and moustache, as worn by Mr. T., television star of early 1980s.

marcel wave Artificial wave put in woman's hair with heated curling irons, devised by hairdresser Marcel of France in 1907 and popular in the 1920s.

mini-mini braids/mini-plaits Extremely minute braids introduced in 1968. Natural hair may be styled in this manner or a hairpiece attached.

Mohawk Style in which entire head is shaved except for upstanding fringe of hair, about 3" high and 2" or more wide, running from brow to the nape of the neck. Sometimes left long and made to stand up in "spikes" with gel. See *hairstyles: PORCUPINE*. *Der.* Adapted from style worn by Mohawk Indians.

Montague curls (mon'-ta-ghu) Woman's evening hairstyle with a fringe of crescent-shaped curls pasted to the forehead in 1877.

Ninon coiffure (nē-nonh' kwa-foor') Hairstyle with ringlet curls over the forehead, shoulder-length curls at sides (sometimes wired), and back hair pulled into a knot. Introduced in England in mid-17th c. *Der.* Style was later given this name after Anne de Lenclos (1620–1705), known as Ninon de Lenclos, a legendary courtesan and Parisian fashion leader.

onion See *POMPADOUR #1*.

oreilles de chien (or-ray de she-en) Nickname for two long curls worn at either side of face by men from 1790 to 1800. *Der.* French, "dog's ears."

pageboy Straight hair shoulder length or shorter, with ends curled under at back and sides very smoothly. A classic hairstyle. *Der.* From hair of medieval "pages."



pannier curls (pann-yeh') Curls worn at sides of face in front of the ears.

permanent/permanent wave Waves or curls that last until hair is cut off, originally created by chemicals and heated rollers, later by means of chemicals alone. First permanent wave was invented by Charles Nestlé in 1906. First machine wave, introduced in beauty shops, required electrical wiring to each roller. In 1930s, new machineless wave used chemicals and heated rollers. In the early 1940s, the first *cold wave*, in which chemicals curled the hair without heating it, was introduced. This made home permanents possible. In 1960s a soft version called a body wave gave hair more fullness for noncurly coiffures. Popular for men in late 1970s. In slang, called *perm*. Also see *HAIRSTYLES: MARCEL WAVE*.

pigeon-wings See *WIGS AND HAIRPIECES*.

pigtails **1.** Hair worn in two side braids, sometimes with ribbon bow tied on ends. Popular style for young girls since 1940s. **2.** Child's hairstyle for short hair with tiny, ribbon-tied braids all over head.

pin curls **1.** Curls used on forehead or sides of face made by winding hair around the finger then set with bobby pins. When pins are removed, curl is left tightly twisted. **2.** Method of setting the hair by making tiny curls all over the head and securing them with bobby pins. May be combed out into either waves or curls.

pixie haircut Short hairstyle cut in layered style close to head and combed in points around forehead and face.

pompadour (pohm'-pah-dure) **1.** Woman's hair brushed up high and smooth from forehead and temples, sometimes teased or rolled over false stuffing and tucked into a small bun

on top of head. Copied from style worn in late 19th and early 20th c. See GIBSON GIRL. Variations of this style called *La Belle Epoque*, *concierge*, *onion*, *Boddini*, and *La Goulue* in late 1960s. **2.** Hair rolled up in front with back worn **pompadour #1** straight and curled on ends, popular in 1940s. **3.** Man's hair worn rather long and brushed straight up and back from forehead with no part. Also see HAIRSTYLES: QUIFF. **4.** See HAIR ACCESSORIES: POMPON. *Der.* From Marquise de Pompadour, mistress of Louis XV of France.



ponytail **1.** Hair pulled to crown or center back of head and tied with a ribbon or held with an elastic band. Ends left hanging loose like a horse's tail. **2.** Hair parted in the center and two ponytails made—one on either side of the face near the ears.



poodle cut All over short curled effect similar to hair of a poodle. Also called *curlyhead*.

porc-epic See HAIRSTYLES: PORCUPINE HEAD-DRESS.

porcupine hairstyle Man's 1985 hairstyle with center portion from forehead to neck left longer with even longer strands about 8" in length made to stand up on top of head with gel or mousse.

porcupine headdress Man's hairstyle, with short hair standing up like bristles, worn at end of 18th c. Also called *porc-epic*.

pouf See HAIRSTYLES: BOUFFANT.

pouf au sentiment (poof o sont-eh'-mont) Extravagantly high hairstyle elaborately decorated with flowers and other objects, worked over a framework of gauze. Worn by women in 18th c. before the French Revolution.

psyche knot (si-kee) Copy of Greek hairstyle for women with hair pulled back and twisted to form a knot at back of head. *Der.* Named for Greek mythological maiden, Psyche, the lover of Cupid, made immortal by Jupiter.

pudding-basin cut See HAIRSTYLES: BOWL CROP.

puffs Women's hair when BACK-COMBED (see under HAIRSTYLES) to form bouffant effect at sides of face in early 20th c.

punk hair A variety of unusual hairstyles including MOHAWK, PORCUPINE, and SPIKY HAIRSTYLES (see under HAIRSTYLES), sometimes dyed a variety of colors.



queue (kew) Long single braid hanging down the back. Similar to hairstyle worn by Chinese men. Also spelled *cue*.

queue de lion See HAIRSTYLES: LION'S TAIL.

quiff Hairs tye brushed forward first, then back, giving a somewhat *pompadour* effect in front. Similar to style affected by Elvis Presley, a rock-music superstar of the 1950s and 1960s.

Rasta dreadlocks See HAIRSTYLES: DREADLOCKS.

razor cut Haircut that is done using a razor blade rather than a scissors.

Rècamier hairstyle (ray-cahm'-ee-ay) Hairstyle of 1870s and 1880s arranged with *chignon* high on back of head and curls at neck. *Der.* Named after hairstyle worn by Madame Rècamier.

reverse guiche See HAIRSTYLES: GUICHE.

ringlets Loose curls that hang in dangling fashion.



romeo Modified PAGEBOY cut (see **ringlets** under HAIRSTYLES) with bangs falling to eyebrows, sides cut sloping backward to reveal the face as an oval, and hair gently turned under at back and sides.

Sassoon Short, straight boyish hairdo, combed forward from crown, cut in low bangs, shaped to points in front of ears, and shingled in back to deep V. *Der.* First ABSTRACT CUT (see under HAIRSTYLES), designed by British hairdresser Vidal Sassoon in 1964.

sausage curl Tightly rolled horizontal curl usually arranged in layers around sides or back of head from ear level to nape of neck. Popular in late 1930s, early 1940s, and revived in 1980s.

sculptured hair Hair covered with mousse so that it may be arranged in fan-shaped design

or brushed straight up from face and cut in scalloped design at top. Styles were introduced by Patti LaBelle, a rock singer in mid-1980s.

shag Longish bob, layered for a shaggy look, with bangs and “shaggy” in front of ears. An innovation of the late 1960s. Also called *ape-drape*.

shingle Tapering of hair up back of head, and sometimes around to the sides, in imitation of a man’s conventional haircut. Style introduced in 1920s for women, achieving new popularity in the 1960s and 1980s and after. Also see HAIRSTYLES: BINGLE.

sideburns That part of a man’s hair and whiskers that extends from his hairline to below the ears.

spiky hair Short or medium-length hair, segmented and twisted to form pointed projections that are stiffened with hair spray, gel or mousse. Sometimes dyed different colors (e.g., blue, orange, and pink).



sideburns

spit curls Separate ringlets formed flat against the forehead or cheek often held in place by water, setting lotion, or lacquer. Popular in 1930s, and revived in 1970s and 1980s. Also see HAIRSTYLES: GUICHE.

Statue of Liberty hair Outré hairstyle of 7 spikes of hair, sprayed to stand erect, framing face like Statue of Liberty crown. *Der.* Inspired by the July 4, 1986, celebration of the restoration of the Statue of Liberty in New York harbor.

tapered haircut The hair is cut progressively shorter down the back of the head to nape of the neck. The length of the hair being tapered can vary depending on the style.

taure See HAIRSTYLES: BULLHEAD.

teasing See HAIRSTYLES: BACK-COMBING.

teddy boy cut See TEDDY BOY in alphabetical listing.

tendrils Long loosely curled strands of hair worn hanging at the forehead, sides, or nape of neck, popular with the pompadour hairstyle (see HAIRSTYLES: POMPADOUR #1).

tipping Hand-painting the tips of sections of the hair.

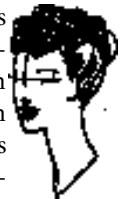
Titus Coiffure, worn in late 18th c. after the French Revolution, that resembled the way a man condemned to the guillotine wore his hair, cut short and brushed forward over forehead. Also called *Titus hairstyle*. *Der.* From hairstyle of Roman Emperor, Titus, A.D. 79–81.

topknot Hair twisted into a knot or bun at the crown of the head.

twenties bob See HAIRSTYLES: BOB.

under cut See HAIRSTYLES: BOWL CUT.

upsweep/updo Popular 1940s woman’s hairstyle with medium-long hair brushed upward from the sides and nape of neck, then secured on top of the head in curls or a pompadour (see under HAIRSTYLES: POMPADOUR #1).



upsweep

urchin See HAIRSTYLES: GAMIN.

Veronica Lake hairstyle Long hair parted on side with heavier section hanging down almost covering one eye. Worn by film star Veronica Lake in 1940s, revived after interest for older movies in 1960s.

wash-and-wear hair 1. Hair worn in a tousled mass, achieved by washing hair and allowing it to hang uncombed. First popular in early 1980s. 2. Any hair style that is cut so as to allow the hair to be washed and worn without any additional styling.

waterfall Woman’s hairstyle of the 1860s and 1870s, usually made with a piece of false waved hair hanging down in back in a confined mass or in form of loose chignon with braid pulled tight at center, making two loops of hair.

water wave See HAIRSTYLES: FINGERWAVE.

wedge Hair is tapered close to the head at the nape of the neck, almost to a V. Above this the hair is full and all one length. The front and sides are all one length, squared off at middle of ear, and short bangs are informally styled. *Der.* Popular after it was worn by Dorothy Hamill, an Olympic figure skating champion in 1976.

white walls See HAIRSTYLES: FLATTOP.

wind-blown bob Popular 1930s woman’s hairstyle that was cut short and shingled, so that

hair fell softly about the face as if blown by the wind.

Hale, Sarah Josepha See *GODEY'S LADY'S BOOK*.

half Adjective used for smaller or incomplete items of apparel or accessories. The prefix *demi* is a synonym. See APRONS: HALF APRON, BELTS: HALF BELT, EYEWEAR: HALF GLASSES, FOOTWEAR: DEMI-BOOT, HOSIERY: HALF HOSE, SHIRTS: HALF SHIRT, SHOULDERS AND SLEEVES: HALF SLEEVE, UNDERGARMENTS: DEMI-BRA and HALF SLIP.

half-compass cloak See CAPES, CLOAKS, AND SHAWLS: COMPASS CLOAK.

half coronet See HEADWEAR: DEMI-CORONAL.

half dress Late 18th and 19th-c. term for daytime or semiformal evening dress. Also called *half-toilette* or *demi-toilette*.

half gaiters See FOOTWEAR: SPATS.

half gown See HALF ROBE.

half handkerchief See SCARVES.

half-jack boot See FOOTWEAR: JOCKEY BOOT.

half kirtle See KIRTLE.

half lining Lining of only part of the garment (e.g., front completely lined but only the shoulders lined in the back). Frequently used in men's jackets and topcoats.

half mask See MASKS: DOMINO.

half-moon pocket See POCKETS.

half mourning See MOURNING DRESS.

half-piqué/half P.K. seam See GLOVES AND GLOVE CONSTRUCTION.

half robe Low-necked, short-sleeved, thigh-length tunic worn over long gown with fullness pulled in at waist by narrow ribbon. Worn from late 18th to early 19th c. Also called *half-gown* or *demi-habilliment*.

half sizes Women's garments cut for a fully developed figure: short-waisted in back, larger in waist and hips, height about 5'2" to 5'8"—usually sized 10½ to 24½.

half-toilette See HALF DRESS.

Hall of Fame See COTY AMERICAN FASHION CRITICS' AWARD.

halo hat See HEADWEAR: PAMELA.

Halston * See APPENDIX/DESIGNERS.

halter Strap encircling the neck used to support front of a garment, leaving shoulders and back bare. Popular in 1930s and 1940s, revived in early

1970s and periodically since then. Used on blouses, dresses, evening wear and swimsuits. See BLOUSES AND TOPS: HALTER TOP, NECKLINES AND COLLARS: HALTER NECKLINE.

Hamburg lace See LACES.

hamster See FURS.

hand † Characteristics of a fabric that are revealed through sense of touch (e.g., crispness, softness, smoothness, drape, resilience, fineness, and the like).

HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES

handbag Accessory carried primarily by women and girls to hold such items as money, credit cards, and cosmetics. Comes in many styles and made of a variety of materials (e.g., leather, fabric, vinyl, metal, plastic, canvas, straw, and patent leather). The word is often shortened to *bag*. Also called a *purse* or *pocketbook*. From 13th to 16th c. the *AULMONIERE*, a small leather pouch, was worn suspended from man's girdle in order to have alms for the poor. From late 19th to early 20th c., women carried a small elongated bag called a *RETICULE*. In late 19th c., various types of handbags began to be carried mainly for traveling. By 1920s it was a necessary accessory. In 1968 the *MANBAG* was introduced for men. See cross-references under HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES.

accordion bag Bag made like an expandable filing envelope that is narrow at the top and pleated at sides and bottom. Usually made with a handle and frequently with a zipper compartment in the center. *Der.* From resemblance to pleats on the musical instrument of this name.

American Indian bag See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES: SQUAW BAG.

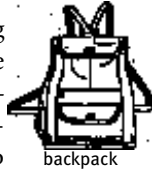
Apache bag See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES: SQUAW BAG.

attaché case See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES: BRIEFCASE #1.

aulmoniere (all-mon-yehr') Medieval pouch of silk or leather suspended from girdle worn by nobles from the 13th c. until the Refor-

mation to carry alms. Also used by women in 14th c. to carry mirrors and tweezers for their hair. Also spelled *aumoniere*, *aulmonier*, *almoner*. *Gipsier* was such a bag worn by men in late Middle Ages. Also spelled *gipcière*, *gypsire*.

backpack Bag with straps fitting over shoulders so that it can be worn on the back. Term *backpack* has largely replaced *KNAPSACK* (see under *HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES*) in describing bags worn on the back. Used since 1970s to carry books and sometimes used in place of a handbag in the 1980s and after. Usually made of nylon or other *MANUFACTURED FIBERS* and sometimes of real or synthetic leather. Variations now include a backpack designed to be carried over one shoulder and called a **one-shoulder backpack**.



backpack

bag See *HANDBAG* in introduction to *HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES*.

baguette bag (bah-ge't') Popular woman's handbag originated by Italian design house of Fendi. An extended oblong shape, the bag closes with a flap over the front and may have both a shoulder strap and handles. It is made in a wide variety of materials. *Der.* Named after a long, narrow loaf of French bread.

ballentine See *HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES: RETICULE*.

barrel bag Handbag shaped like a stubby cylinder with a zipper closing and handles attached to the sides. *Der.* From the shape similar to a small barrel.



barrel bag

basket bag Applies to many types of handbags. Originally woven only of reed in typical basket shapes. Now made of reed, straw, cane, interwoven plastic strips, or other materials such as leather or plastic in the shape of a basket. One popular style resembles a small picnic hamper. Sometimes decorated with shells, beads, sequins, brass, or leather.



basket bag

beaded bag Any ornate small bag entirely covered with varicolored pearls or glass beads or a fabric bag, often satin, with a design worked

in beads. Beaded bags were used for daytime and evening throughout the 19th c. but were limited to more formal wear by the 20th c. One type popular in the early 1900s was usually hand-crocheted in small elongated pouch style with a drawstring top and a beaded tassel at the bottom. Another style, made in France, was oblong in shape with beaded fringe on the bottom and sterling silver frame and handle. This latter type was revived in 1968.



beaded bag

belt bag **1.** A small bag worn at waist having slots in the back through which a belt is drawn. Usually has a flap closing and is worn with sportswear. **2.** A pouch bag with handle through which a belt is drawn.

billfold See *HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES: WALLET*.

book bag Slim oblong bag the size of a notebook cinched around center with strap that forms loop handle; introduced in 1970s.

bourse (boorce) Large purse or bag worn from 1440 until mid-18th c. Later spelled *burse*.

box bag Handbag with rigid frame, similar to small suitcase or lunchbox, made in leather, metal, or vinyl.

bracelet bag Type of handbag with one or two *BANGLE BRACELETS* (see under *JEWELRY*) as handles. May be a soft pouch bag made of leather or fabric, or it may be made with a frame.

briefcase **1.** Large, usually flat case with a carrying handle, most often made of real or synthetic leather and is large enough or can expand sufficiently to hold documents, books, and the like. Also called *attaché case*. **2.** Handbag of briefcase size for woman executive that features small outside pockets for personal items.

bucket bag Round handbag made in the shape of a bucket.

budget Wallet or extra pocket hanging from belt used in 17th c.

canteen bag Circular-style bag frequently made with a shoulder strap and zipper closing. Made in the shape of a flat canteen used to carry water in dry climates.

caravan bag See *HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES: SAFARI BAG*.

carpet bag Handbag made of patterned carpeting or heavy tapestry, in a large satchel style. Popular in 19th c., late 1960s, and revived in mid-1980s in lighter-weight fabrics.

Der. From carpet valises popular with Northerners for travel just after the Civil War. Southerners alluded to the travelers by the derisive term “carpetbaggers.”



carpet bag

carryall See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES: TOTE BAG.

carryall clutch Woman's wallet designed to hold coins, bills, photographs and credit cards. Usually the size of U.S. paper money, with snap closing on long edge and purselike sections for coins.

Chanel bag Handbag designed by French couturiere Gabrielle Chanel that has become a classic. Of quilted leather with gold chain handles, it has a gold House of Chanel logo on the front.



Chanel bag

change purse Small purse that closes by a snap clasp on the rigid frame or by a zipper. Usually carried inside handbag to hold coins and made in leather, clear plastic, or matched to the larger handbag. Also called a *coin purse*.



chatelaine bag

chatelaine bag (shat'-eh-lane) Small handbag that hung from waist by ornamental chain and hook, popular from 1850s to the end of the century.

clutch bag/clutch purse **1.** Regular-sized handbag without a handle. **2.** Type of handbag frequently used for an evening bag. Sometimes has a strap on back through which hand may be inserted, or a fine gold chain attached in such a manner that it is of optional use. Frequently made in envelope style, in which case it is called an **envelope bag**. *Mini-clutch* bags are tiny versions of this style.



clutch purse

coin purse See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES: CHANGE PURSE.

contour clutch WALLET similar to a CLUTCH purse, but curved on top edge, sometimes with attached leather carrying loop at one end. See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES: WAL-

LET and CLUTCH BAG. Also called *swinger* or *swinger clutch*.

cordé bag (kor-day') Any type of handbag made out of a fabric composed of rows of gimp (see under BRAIDS) stitched to a background fabric to make a pattern. Popular style in the 1940s and still used.



cordé bag

courier bag See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES: MESSENGER BAG.

cross body bag Handbag with long strap designed to be worn with the strap over one shoulder and the bag on the other side of the body, which causes the strap to cross the chest. A variation of the shoulder bag (see under HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES) that developed when women started placing shoulder straps across the body in order to make the bag more secure.

doctor's bag Large handbag shaped like the bag traditionally carried by a physician. It has two handles, one on either side of hinged top opening.

drawstring bag Any handbag that is closed by pulling a cord, usually of pouch type.

duffel bag **1.** Large barrel-shaped canvas bag with a drawstring top. Used originally by sailors and soldiers to transport their clothing and other items. When used by sailors, called a *sea bag*. **2.** Copied in various sizes for handbags, beach bags, and luggage. May have an extra piece of fabric on outside that forms large pockets around outside of bag. Generally closes with a zipper. **3.** Small taffeta evening bag in pouch style with large ruffled top closed with tasseled drawstring.



duffel bag #2

envelope bag See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES: CLUTCH BAG.

fanny pack An envelope or pouchlike bag mounted on a strap that fastens around the waist. Intended to be worn with the bag in the back, resting on the hips (or in slang, *fanny*), the bag is made in materials ranging

from sturdy nylon to leather and in many sizes. Originally a day pack for hiking, by 2000 it had become acceptable daytime street wear and is especially popular with travelers.

feed bag Cylindrical leather or canvas bag with flat round bottom and top handles copied from canvas bags used for feeding horses. Fore-runner of many open tote bags.

flight bag **1.** Soft canvas satchel with zippered top closing and two handles, copied from standard carryall issued by airlines to passengers when air travel was less common. **2.** Any handbag used for traveling, larger than a handbag and smaller than a suitcase. Also called a *travel bag*.

fold-over clutch Small envelope bag that may be open at the top or with zippered closing. Bag is folded over double and carried in the hand or under arm.

frame **1.** *n.* Metal top of handbag around which the bag is constructed. **2.** **framing** *v.* Securing the frame to the handbag. Material and lining are fitted into frame and secured permanently by machine.

French purse Foldover wallet for bills. One half incorporates a change purse with metal clasp closing at the top that is actually one end of the wallet.

gaming purse Drawstring bag of kid, velvet, or embroidered fabric used in 17th c. Made with flat stiffened circular base and pleated sides. *Der.* Used to hold counters and coins when “gaming” (e.g., playing cards for money).

gipsy See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES: AULMONIERE.

Grace Kelly bag See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES: KELLY BAG.

Greek bag Square or rectangular wool open-top bag. Handwoven in Greek-key designs, trimmed around edge with cable yarn that also forms the handle.

hatbox bag Handbag made to look like a HATBOX.

hippie bag See SQUAW BAG.

Indian bag See SQUAW BAG.

indispensible See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES: RETICULE.

interchangeable bag Complete handbag with extra covers that snap or button over frame to change colors.

inverted frame Handbag industry term for type of frame covered with fabric or leather so metal frame does not show at top of bag.

Kelly bag Handbag favored by Princess Grace of Monaco (actress Grace Kelly) in the 1950s. After Grace Kelly was seen frequently carrying an alligator TOTE (see under HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES) made by the design firm Hermès, the firm began to call this bag the Kelly bag. It has since become a classic style, and variations of the bag are now made by many manufacturers.



Kelly bag

Kikuyu Open-top straw tote bag with leather handles. Handwoven of natural sisal in horizontal strips of red and blue alternating with natural color. Made by Kikuyu craftsmen of Kenya.

knapsack A carryall made in heavy fabric that had shoulder straps and was worn by soldiers and hikers to carry necessary gear. Now more likely to be called a BACKPACK (see under HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES) and made in a wide variety of materials for many purposes.

lunchbox bag Identical in shape to the traditional deep lunchbox with a curved lid. Introduced from Italy in 1967, it was first made in papier-mâché and later in metal. Distinctive feature is a collage effect of decorative pictures pasted on the outside and then shellacked. Later do-it-yourself DÉCOUPAGE kits were marketed.

manbag Handbag, usually a shoulder bag style or with a wrist strap, that is carried by a man. A fashion that gained in popularity in early 1970s as an outgrowth of wide use of camera bags by men.



manbag

mesh bag Tiny links of metal joined to make a flexible bag. Popular in early 1900s in small size with sterling silver top and chain with the metal frequently enameled in a floral design. In the 1940s, mesh handbags were made with

larger white enameled links and white plastic frames.

messenger bag Large bag with an envelope-like main compartment that usually closes with a zipper and has a large flap over the front that fastens with a buckle or snap. May have either shoulder straps or handles. Inspired by bags carried by messengers. A smaller version with a more tailored, square appearance is called a **courier bag**.

minaudiere (min-oh'-dee-yehr') Small, rigid metal evening bag made in oval, oblong or square shapes and used to hold cosmetics. Carried in hand or by short chain. Decorated by engraved designs or set with jewels, this expensive jeweler's product gained popularity when sold by Cartier in New York. *Der.* French, *simper*, "to smirk."

mini bag Small bags that became important in the 1960s with the introduction of miniskirts. Tiny bags were introduced in all styles. Some had double and triple frames, usually with attached shoulder chains or straps.

mini-clutch bag See CLUTCH BAG.

miser's purse Small tubular purse closed at each end, with a slit in center, and two movable rings to keep money at one end or other. Carried from latter half of 17th through 19th c. Constructed either by netting, knotting, or knitting and often beaded, the bags varied in size with 18th c. and Victorian period purses being larger than those of the early 19th c. Also called *wallet*, *ring purse*, *stocking purse*, or *Victorian long purse*.

Moroccan bag 1. Tooled leather handbag made in Morocco of Moroccan leather. Decorated with elaborate designs and color combinations, such as saffron and wine. 2. Handbag made with stitched all-over design in saffron on wine-colored leather.

muff bag Basically a muff, an accessory used to keep the hands warm, frequently styled in fur. In the 1930s a zipped compartment to hold small items was added to the muff, and this became a classic item used by little girls.



miser's purse

newsbag TOTE BAG style (see under HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES) with separate section on the outside to slip in a rolled magazine or newspaper.

one-shoulder backpack See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES: BACKPACK.

pannier bag (pan-yeh') A bag with zipper compartment in the center and two open compartments on either side. A single broad handle extends from one side to the other on the outside of the bag at the middle.

pianta bag (pee-ahn'-tah) Small evening bag introduced from Italy in mid-1960s resembling a tiny umbrella made from a square of fabric with four corners folded to the center and a looped center handle.

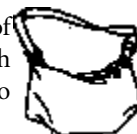
pocketbook Originally an envelope-like container for written materials and paper money carried by men in the 17th and 18th c. Made of leather and often tooled or decorated or of silk or wool worked in colored or metal yarns. Eventually became a synonym for women's handbag.

pokey Small drawstring pouch made of sueded leather, sometimes with tiny pocket on front. Popular in the late 1960s. *Der.* Copied from a small leather bag used by '49ers to carry gold nuggets and gold dust.

pompadour bag Drawstring bag in circular or oblong shape, popular in mid-1880s, made of satin, plush, or velvet with floral embroidery heightened by edgings of gold or silver thread. *Der.* Named after Marquise de Pompadour, mistress of Louis XV of France.

porte-monnaie (port-mohn'ay) Embroidered handbag carried by women in the 1850s, made with metal frame; sometimes with chain handle, sometimes in clutch styles. *Der.* French, "purse."

pouch Basic style originally made of soft shirred leather or fabric with a drawstring closing. Now also made with a frame and handles.

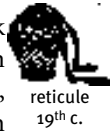


pouch

purse See introduction to HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES.

reticule (ret-ih-kewl') Woman's small purse made of satin, mesh, velvet, red morocco

leather, and other materials. Took many shapes, e.g., shaped like an envelope, an urn, a lozenge, a circle, a shell, or a basket. Used from 19th to early 20th c. When first introduced sometimes made fun of and called a *ridicule*. Also called *indispensable*, *ballantine*.

reticule
19th c.

ring purse See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES: MISER'S PURSE.

saddle bags Pair of soft leather bags joined to central strap handle. *Der.* From large bags thrown over horse's saddle to carry provisions.

safari bag Double-handled bag made like a small flight bag with a zippered closing. Characteristic features are the small pockets placed low on the outside of the bag. One of the most popular bags of the late 1960s and now a classic style. Also called *caravan bag*.



safari bag

Sally Jess® bag Trademarked by English designer Sally Jess, this bag was a favorite with British younger set in the 1960s. Made of fabric in simple tote design with fabric handle and two cut-out crescent sections at the top.

satchel Leather bag with a rigid flat bottom. The sides slope upward to close on metal frame hinged about halfway down the bag. Often fastened with extra snap locks and with metal reinforcements at corners. Sides are usually recessed. Handle is generally rigid and curved. Similar to a DOCTOR'S BAG (see under HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES).

sea bag See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES: DUFFEL BAG.

shigra Handmade handbag of tote type sold to American tourists or exported to the United States from Ecuador, made from fibers taken from the leaves of the cabuya plant. Artisans use a looping system done with a needle to form distinctive patterns with natural and colored yarns. Originally used for storage of grain and flour. Made in patterns characteristic of different communities in Ecuador.

shoulder bag Handbag in any shape or size with long chain or strap to place over the shoulder. Some types of shoulder straps con-

vert to double chain handles, others may be shortened by unbuckling a section of the strap.

signature bag Handbag of leather or canvas with designer's initials or signature stenciled or printed in an all-over repeat pattern. Originating with Louis Vuitton in Paris, later copied by Hermès, Saint Laurent, Mark Cross, Gucci, etc., and considered a fashion status symbol.

Vuitton®
signature bag

sovereign purse Small, round, half-inch diameter purse on a curved metal clasp for holding small coins. Carried in the 18th and 19th c.

sporrán bag (spo'-an) Adaptation for women of sporran (see HIGHLAND COSTUME) as worn by the Scots Highlander. Shoulder bag is made of leather with long strands of horsehair hanging from it. The frame is metal.

squaw bag Handbag inspired by bags used by Native Americans. May be made of genuine doeskin in natural color or made of tiny geometric contrasting patches of colored leather. Most bags are trimmed with fringe. Popular handbag of the late 1960s. Also called *American Indian bag*, *Apache bag*, and *hippie bag*. *Der.* Name by which settlers called Native American woman.

stocking purse See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES: MISER'S PURSE.

suitcase bag Handbag made of metal and shaped like a miniature suitcase complete with lock and reinforced corners.

swagger pouch Bag with double handles and two open sections on either side of zippered compartment. Classic style since the 1930s.

swinger bag See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES: CONTOUR CLUTCH.

tooled leather bag Typical Western-type handbag made of natural colored cowhide with handstamped pattern. Each individual character is stamped with a metal die.



tote bag 1. Utility bag, large enough to carry small packages, sometimes with inner zippered compartment for

tote bag

money. Copied from shape of common paper shopping bag. Made with open top and two handles, sometimes with outside loop to hold umbrella. **2.** Any large bag with open top and two handles.

travel bag See FLIGHT BAG.

travelling bag Large handbag consisting of two somewhat circular pouches made of fabric fringed around the edges and joined together at the top. Used when traveling in the 1860s.

triplex/triple-framed bag Triple-framed bag with three separate clasps. Each section is an individual compartment. Introduced in 1967, many were styled as tiny mini bags (see under HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES).

umbrella tote **1.** TOTE BAG (see under HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES), but with a pocket at side for holding an umbrella. **2.** Bag shaped like a briefcase with a zipper around it and the umbrella attached to the side with a plastic loop. **3.** Conventional satchel-type bag with zippered compartment at bottom for umbrella.

vanity bag Stiff-framed box-shaped bag usually fitted with a large mirror and sometimes other grooming accessories.

Victorian long purse See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES: MISER'S PURSE.

wallet **1.** Accessory used to carry money, credit cards, and photographs. Sometimes with change purse attached and/or space for checkbook and note pad. Originally used only by men, now also used by women and children. Also called a *billfold* when designed to hold paper money, credit or other cards and photos, and made to fold in center. **2.** In 1980s smaller sizes, closed with VELCRO,[®] were introduced to wear on wrist, ankle, or belt, primarily when engaging in sports (e.g., jogging). **3.** See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES: POCKETBOOK. **4.** See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES: MISER'S PURSE.

Zouave pouch (zoo-ahv') Small handbag of various shapes—sometimes rectangular, sometimes triangular—finished with tassels and hung by a hook from the waistband placed underneath the Zouave jacket. Worn by women

in 1860s. *Der.* Arabic, Zouaoua, a Kabyle tribe, one of the Berbers, living in Algeria or Tunisia.

hand-blocked print See PRINTS, STRIPES, AND CHECKS: BLOCK PRINTING.

handcoverchief/hand cloth See HANDKERCHIEF.

hand cuff See CUFFS: HAND FALL.

hand fall See CUFFS.

handkerchief Square of cotton, linen, or silk, sometimes edged with lace or embroidered, carried and used for wiping the face or nose. Men's are usually larger than women's. Often colored for day use, they might be black or black-bordered for mourning. In 1870, plain white cambric was correct for day or evening. In 1890s, it was fashionable to wear in the cuff of the left sleeve, a practice copied from the military. Modern handkerchiefs are made in a wide variety of colors and sizes, although white predominates. Called a *napkin* in 16th c.

handkerchief dress Dress of the 1880s with a tunic made from, or resembling, a bandanna handkerchief. Two were arranged diagonally on the front of the dress with one point reaching nearly to the hem of dress. A long-skirted jacket with shaped REVERS (see under NECKLINES AND COLLARS) and waistcoat comprised the bodice of the dress. Also see HANDKERCHIEF TUNIC.

handkerchief hem See CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS.

handkerchief linen Lightweight, sheer fine fabric used for handkerchiefs and infants' wear.

handkerchief skirt See SKIRTS.

handkerchief sleeve See SHOULDERS AND SLEEVES.

handkerchief tunic Dress of 1917 with pepulum made from large square of fabric, like a handkerchief. Made with center opening for waist and pointed ends hanging down over skirt.

hand knitting Knitting apparel, accessories, or trimming made entirely by hand as opposed to machine knitting.

hand-painted print See PRINTS, STRIPES, AND CHECKS.

hand-screened print See PRINTS, STRIPES, AND CHECKS: SILK-SCREEN PRINT.

hand sleeve See SHOULDERS AND SLEEVES.

handspun yarn † Yarn made with different types of spindles or hand-spinning wheels—making yarn that is less regular in appearance than machine-made yarns, which adds texture and interest to the woven fabric.

hang *Colloquial* **1.** The way in which fabric drapes on the figure after it is sewn. **2.** Marking the hem of a skirt with pins or chalk so it can be straightened.

hanging sleeve See SHOULDERS AND SLEEVES.

hank See SKEIN.

hanseline See DOUBLET.

happi See SLEEPWEAR AND LOUNGEWEAR: HAPPICOAT.

happy face Stylized face made up of a yellow circle with black dots for eyes and nose and a single black line for mouth. Used on *sweatshirts*, buttons, jewelry, and in prints, since early 1970s.

hardanger embroidery See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES.

hard goods See SOFT GOODS.

hard hat See HEADWEAR.

Hardwick, Cathy * See APPENDIX/DESIGNERS.

hare See FURS.

harem/harem look Simulation of the costumes of the Near East primarily using full ankle-length harem pants gathered at the ankle combined with blouse and bolero or in bare-midriff effect. Sandals are generally worn; jewelry and chains complete the costume. Appeared in the late 1960s to 1980s. Also called *Arabian Nights look*. Also used as an adjective to describe apparel derived from clothing thought to have been worn by Middle Eastern women. See HAREM DRESS, PANTS: HAREM KNICKERS, PANTS: HAREM PANTS, SKIRTS: HAREM SKIRTS, and SLEEPWEAR AND LOUNGEWEAR: HAREM PAJAMAS.

harem dress Symmetrically or asymmetrically draped dress falling in loose folds to the hem where it is turned under and fastened to a lining giving the hem a draped appearance. Usually made of soft, clinging fabric. In styles of the early 20th c., often made as a harem

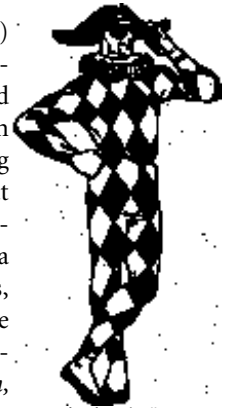


harem dress 1913

skirt worn under a tunic overskirt. *Der.* An adaptation of Middle Eastern dress introduced by Paris designers Paul Poiret and Drécoll in 1910 and revived at intervals.

harlequin (hahr'-leh-kwin)

1. Traditional theatrical costume made of varicolored diamond-shaped patches on tunic and tights, a flaring brimmed black BICORNE hat (see under HEADWEAR) decorated with pompons, and a black mask. **2.** See PRINTS, STRIPES, AND CHECKS. **3.** See EYEGLASSES. **4.** See HEADWEAR. *Der.* From *Harlequin*, a part played by an actor in 16th to 18th c. Italian performances called *commedia dell'arte*. **5.** See PRINTS, STRIPES, AND CHECKS: HARLEQUIN CHECK.



harlequin #1

harlequin opal See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

harlot/herlot Garment, similar to tights, worn by men in England in the late 14th c. Stockings and pants were made in one piece and tied to the upper and outer garments by strings known as points.

Harlow, Jean See HARLOW LOOK.

Harlow look Adaptation of styles of late 1920s and early 1930s including bias-cut dresses, wide-legged cuffed trousers for women, shoes, and slippers of this era. These styles were revived in the 1960s. See FOOTWEAR: HARLOW PUMP and HARLOW SLIPPER, and PANTS: HARLOW PANTS. *Der.* Named for Jean Harlow, platinum blonde Hollywood star of the late 1920s and 1930s who wore such styles on and off the screen.

Harper's Bazaar Womens' fashion magazine that started in 1867 as a weekly tabloid-style newspaper containing many fashion engravings. It became a monthly magazine in 1901 and was bought by William Randolph Hearst in 1913. Among its best-known editors were Edna Woolman Chase, Carmel Snow, and Diana Vreeland.

harp seal See FURS: HAIR SEAL.

Harris Tweed® Trademark of Harris Tweed Association for tweed fabric. Defined by the British Board of Trade and Federal Trade Commission

as handwoven woolen fabric from the Hebrides Islands, off the coast of Scotland, consisting of Harris, Lewis, Uist, Barra, and other smaller islands. There are two types a) made from hand-spun yarn, and b) made from machine-made yarn. Used mainly for women's coats styled in a classic manner.

Hartnell, Sir Norman * See APPENDIX/DESIGNERS.

harvest hat See HEADWEAR.

hasp See CLOSURES.

hat See HEADWEAR.

hatband Decoration, usually of ribbon, around the base of the crown of a hat. In former years, men wore black hatbands for mourning.

hatbox **1.** Initially a circular-shaped item of luggage with a strap handle and flat bottom that was originally made to carry large hats in the 1920s. Now carried by fashion models or used by stores when selling a hat. These boxes may be round, oval, hexagonal, or square in shape. **2.** See BANDBOX.

hatbox bag See HANDBAGS AND RELATED ACCESSORIES.

hat cap See HEADWEAR.

hat mask See MASKS.

hat pin See HEADWEAR.

hauberk See ARMOR.

haunseleyns See DOUBLET.

hausse-cul See BUM ROLL.

haut de chausses See CHAUSSES.

haute couture (oat koo'-toor) **1.** As defined by the CHAMBRE SYNDICALE DE LA PARISIENNE, firms that create models that may be sold to private customers or to other segments of the fashion industry who also acquire the right to reproduce the designs. Designers show at least two collections a year of original designs to the public. An **original design** is not the only one of its kind, but means only that the garment was designed and made in the atelier of the designer. **2.** As currently used in the United States and in the fashion press, refers to the latest and most advanced fashions; high fashion.

haut ton See UNDERGARMENTS.

havelock See HEADWEAR.

havelock cap See HEADWEAR: AUTOMOBILE CAP.

Hawaiian shirt See SHIRTS.

Hawes, Elizabeth (1903–1971) American designer and an author who is best known for her autobiography *Fashion Is Spinach*, which provided insights about the construction of clothing as done by a Parisian couture house.

headband See HEADWEAR.

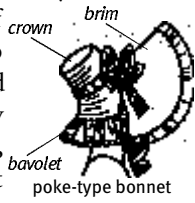
head cloth See HEADWEAR: KERCHIEF.

headdress Synonym for HEADWEAR.


heading See CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS.

head rail See HEADWEAR: KERCHIEF.

HEADWEAR

headwear Covering for the head, a *headcovering*. Headwear may be decorative or utilitarian or both. It may also serve as a symbol of status, e.g., a CROWN (see under HEADWEAR). The category of headwear is often divided among different-named types of headwear. The definitions of types of headwear are found under the category of HEADWEAR in the following entries: BONNET, CAP, HAT, HELMET, VEIL. It is often difficult to assign a head covering to one type, so individually named items each have a separate entry. The components of bonnets, caps, hats, and helmets generally include the **brim**, which is the rim of  hat and may be narrow to wide—worn level, turned down, up, or to a variety of angles, and the **crown**, which is the portion that covers the top of the head.

almuce (al'-mus) A cowl-like hood, frequently of fur or fur-lined, introduced in the 13th c., when it was worn by the clergy for church services in inclement weather.

Alpine hat Various types of hats adapted from Bavarian and Austrian Tyrolean hats. **1.** One contemporary version for men is of fur felt, with a slight **pile**, a slightly peaked crown with a crease in the center, and an upturned brim in the back. Popular since 1940s as a man's sport hat, it was first introduced in the late 1890s. Also called a *Tyrolean hat*. **2.** Woman's hat with high crown and medium-sized brim worn in 

1890s. *Der.* Named for alpine Tyrol region in Austria and Bavaria where this type hat is worn by natives.

American Indian headband Narrow band of leather, fabric, or beadwork placed low on the forehead and tied at side or back, sometimes with feather in back, worn by American Indians and adopted by HIPPIES in the 1960s.

anglesea hat (angle-see') Man's hat with flat brim and high cylindrical-shaped crown, worn about 1830.

Angoulême bonnet (ahn-goo'-lem) Straw bonnet of 1814 made with high pleated crown, broad front brim narrowed at sides, and tied with bow at side. Worn by women in French Empire period, and named for Duchesse d'Angoulême, daughter of Marie Antoinette.

apex Originally, the spike of olive wood on the peak of a cap worn by a Roman *flamen*, a priest of some particular deity. Later the entire cap was known by this name.

applejack cap See HEADWEAR: NEWSBOY CAP.

army cap Caps worn by U.S. Army. See HEADWEAR: FATIGUE, OVERSEAS and SERVICE CAPS.

astronaut's cap Cap similar to a BASEBALL CAP (see under HEADWEAR) with elaborately embroidered gold braid on visor, band of gold braid around edge of crown, gold button on top of crown, and adjustable back strap. Copied from caps worn by astronauts and World War II naval commanders, the gold braid is sometimes facetiously called "scrambled eggs." Also called *commander's cap* and *flight deck cap*.

atef Headdress consisting of tall white cap with two plumes, or feathers, arranged at the sides. Symbolic headdress of certain Egyptian gods, particularly Osiris, also depicted as worn by Egyptian kings.

atours (a-toor') Padded, horned headdress worn by women in 14th and 15th c.

attifet (at-tæ'-fet) Woman's headdress of

16th c. arched on either side of forehead to form a "widow's peak" and draped completely with a veil as seen in paintings of Mary Stuart, Queen of Scots. Also see MARIE STUART BONNET.



attifet 16th c.

attire Used since the 15th c. for woman's headdress of gold and gems worn on state occasions, later shortened to *tire*.

automobile cap Cap and hood of waterproof fabric worn by women for automobile riding in early 1900s that consisted of a flat-topped cap with brim rolled down in front and up in back, worn over a tight-fitting hood exposing only the face. Also see HEADWEAR: HAVELOCK CAP.

automobile veil Wide, sheer, long veil placed over wide-brimmed hat and tied under chin with ends flowing over front of duster; worn for motoring in early 1900s. Most often made of gauze or chiffon. Also called *motoring veil*.

aviator's helmet 1. helmet made of high-impact plastic, sometimes fitted with an oxygen mask, worn by a pilot and crew of planes flying at high altitudes. 2. World War I helmet fitting the head snugly and fastened under the chin. Made of leather with wool or shearling lining for warmth. Goggles were worn on top. Also called *Red Baron helmet* after a famous World War I ace.

babet bonnet/babet cap 1. Small cap for evening worn by women in 1838. Usually made with wide side frills and flattened top, sometimes of tulle. 2. Woman's morning cap of muslin with ribbon trimming, covering ears and part of cheeks; worn from 1836 to 1840s.

baby bonnet Infant's cap, often made of batiste and lavishly trimmed with lace and ribbons, that is fitted to shape of head and tied under chin.

baby Stuart cap Classic type of infant's close-fitting cap with narrow chin band, illustrated in portrait of Charles II painted by Van Dyck in 1634.

bag bonnet Woman's bonnet with soft crown fitted loosely over back of head, worn in early 19th c.

bag cap Man's cloth cap, sometimes made of velvet, shaped like a turban, trimmed with fur or ornamental band; worn in 14th and 15th c.

bagnolette (ban'-yo-let) Woman's wired hood standing away from face, covering shoulder; worn in 18th c.

balaclava (bal-ah-kla'-vah) Hood covering the head and shoulders exposing the face, made of knitted wool. Worn by soldiers in 1890s and in World War I and II in cold weather. Now worn by mountain climbers and skiers. *Der.* Named for Crimean War, Battle of Balaklava, fought October 25, 1854.



balloon hat Woman's hat with wide brim and large puffed-out crown, of gauze over a wire or straw foundation. Fashionable from 1783 to 1785. Inspired by balloon flight of Lunardi. Also called *Lunardi hat* and *parachute hat*.

Balmoral cap/bonnet Flat Scottish beret somewhat similar to a TAM-O-SHANTER (see HEADWEAR: TAM) with wide checked band around head. Usually dark blue with a red or blue pompon on top, with feather and badge of the clan on one side. Worn with *kilts* in Scotland.

bambin/bambino hat (bam-been) Woman's hat with a halo-shaped brim rolling away from the face, worn in the 1930s.

bandeau (band-oh') Narrow piece of ribbon or fabric, sometimes decorated, worn around head as substitute for a hat.

bandore and peak Widow's black head dress with heart-shaped brim and black veil, draped in back; worn from 1700 to about 1830.

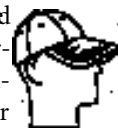
barbe Long piece of white linen fabric, pleated vertically, worn encircling the chin with a black hood and long black veil by widows and mourners from 14th to 16th c.

barbette/barbet (bar-bet') Used in the 13th and first half of 14th c. for the linen chin band worn pinned on the top, or sides, of the head, and worn with a small white fillet or COVERCHIEF (see under HEADWEAR). The barbette and coverchief formed the wimple (see under HEADWEAR: WIMPLE #1) in France.

barrette (ba-ret) **1.** Brimless hat with round flat top worn by Jewish men and boys. Clement VII on June 13, 1525, ordered all Jews to wear a yellow barrette. Later revoked, but Pope Paul IV in 1555 ordered all Jews to wear a green barrette. Same style worn for synagogue dress until early 19th c. by Jewish men.

Also spelled *beret*. **2.** See CLERICAL DRESS: BIRETTA #2.

baseball cap Cap with dome-shaped crown, sometimes made with alternate panels of nylon net for coolness, and an adjustable band or elastic at the back. May have any type of "patch," slogan, or picture on front, e.g., major league football, baseball and Little League team names, makes of cars or trucks, sports insignia, soft-drink brands, cartoon characters, and the like. When first introduced, cap fit more closely to the head like a skullcap. In the 1990s wearing these caps backward became a fad among the young. Also see HEADWEAR: BATTER'S CAP.



basket Woman's hat resembling a wicker basket, 1½' high; worn in second half of 16th c.

basque beret See HEADWEAR: BERET #1.

bathing cap Tight-fitting cap made of rubber or ELASTOMERS, with or without strap under chin. May be elaborately decorated with rubber flowers, fringe, or other trimmings. Worn to protect hair while swimming.

battant l'oeil (bah-tan' loy) Woman's cap, worn in 1770s, with sides projecting forward over temples, eyes, and cheeks in exaggerated fashion.

batter's cap/batter's helmet Duck-bill visored cap with hard crown for protection worn by baseball players when taking turn at bat.

bavolet (ba-vo'-lay) A ruffle or piece of doth extended down from the back of woman's bonnet to shade the neck, worn from 1830 on.

beach hat Hat used as a sunshade on the beach or at a resort, usually made of bright-colored straw, either natural or synthetic, in a variety of shapes. Frequently has a wide brim, conical crown, and sometimes decorated with felt, sequins, or shells.

beanie See HEADWEAR: SKULLCAP.

bearskin cap Tall cylindrical cap of black bearskin with a chain or strap under lower lip or the chin. Worn by some personnel of the British army, also by military guards of Buckingham Palace in London and Parliament buildings in

Ottawa, Canada. Also see HEADWEAR: DRUM MAJOR'S HAT.

beaver hat 1. Hat worn from 14th c. by men and women. Originally made of beaver skins, later with beaver-hair nap felted over wool and rabbit hair base. Also see HEADWEAR: CASTOR. 2. Man's tall hat made of silk in imitation of beaver fur, fashionable in 17th and 18th c. In the 19th c. called *silk hat*, *opera hat*, and *top hat*.

bebe bonnet Tiny outdoor bonnet of 1877 trimmed with ribbons, flowers, and tulle worn with brim turned up showing a cap underneath.

bebop cap See HEADWEAR: NEWSBOY CAP.

becca See HEADWEAR: ROUNDLET.

beefeater's hat Distinctive hat worn by Yeomen of the Guard in England, consisting of a narrow brim and soft high crown pleated into headband with crown flaring slightly at the top. Also see BEEFEATER'S UNIFORM.

beehive hat 1. Woman's hat with large bubble-shaped crown and narrow brim trimmed with ribbon tied under chin; worn in 1770s and 1780s. Also called *hive bonnet*. 2. Same style decorated to look like a beehive and fashionable about 1910.

beguin (bay-gan') Early 16th-c. headdress made from stiffened rectangle of white linen creased in center over the forehead and draped to form a heart-shaped opening for the face. The back was caught together at nape of neck and remainder was folded symmetrically to form a wide streamer that hung from top of head down the back. *Der.* French, *beguine*, "nun." Also called a *Flemish hood*.

bellboy/bellhop cap Small fabric pill box, often trimmed with gold braid, sometimes with chin strap, worn by hotel or restaurant bellboys.

benjy British slang term for straw hat with a wide brim.

beret (beh-ray') General name given to a round, flat hat, usually synonymous with tam (see under HEADWEAR). Some specific types include. 1. **basque beret** (bask beh-ray') Round, flat, soft woolen



French or
pancake beret

cap worn by Basque peasants who inhabit the western Pyrenees region of France and Spain.

2. **pancake beret** Flat molded felt tam. Worn tilted to one side of the head and associated with the dress of an artist. Also called a *French beret*. 3. **bubble beret** Large bouffant beret, usually without a brim, worn tilted to side of head in the early 1960s. 4. A headcovering with a large flat halo crown with elaborate trim, worn from the 1820s to the 1840s.

bergère hat (ber-zher')



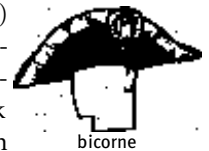
Woman's straw hat with low crown and a wide floppy-type brim, sometimes tied under chin. Worn from 1730 to 1800, revived in 1860s and currently used to describe similar hats. Worn by Marie Antoinette (1755–1793), wife of Louis XVI of France, when she played at farming on the grounds of the palace at Versailles. Also called *milkmaid hat* or *shepherdess hat*. *Der.* French, "shepherdess."

berretino See HEADWEAR: ROUNDLET #1.

Bewdley cap See HEADWEAR: MONMOUTH CAP.

bi bi bonnet (bee-bee bun-neh) Small woman's bonnet worn in 1830s with sides flaring upward and forward around the face and tied with lace-trimmed ribbons. Also called *English cottage bonnet*.

bicorne/bicorn (by'-korn)



Man's hat of the Napoleonic era in shape of a crescent, with front and back brims pressed against each other, making points on either side. Frequently trimmed with a COCKADE. *Der.* Latin, *bicornis*, "two-horned."

bicycle-clip hat Tiny half-hat fastened over crown and side of head by piece of springy metal. Often used for a child's hat of fur. *Der.* From metal clip worn around leg when riding a bicycle to keep trousers from catching in chain or wheel spokes.

bicycle helmet Helmet not covering the ears, with dark adjustable visor and air inlets for ventilating and cooling, held on by a strap under the chin. Shell is high-impact PVC plastic lined with polystyrene, and foam-lined for comfort.

biggin/biggonet/biggon (big-in/big-on-net) **1.** 16th- and 17th-c. term for woman's or child's cap similar to COIF (see under HEADWEAR). **2.** Man's nightcap, worn from second half of 16th through 17th c. **3.** Large MOB CAP (see under HEADWEAR). Made without chin ties, worn in early 19th c. *Der.* French, *beguine*, "nun."

bill See HEADWEAR: VISOR.

billiment/billment (bee-leh-mahn') **1.** 16th-c. term for the decorative jeweled border on French hoods, sometimes made by goldsmiths. **2.** Head ornament worn by brides in 16th c. Also called *habillement* (*habiliment*), *abillements*, or *borders*.

billcock/billcock 19th-c. colloquial term for man's soft, wide, curved-brimmed hat with low crown. *Der.* From either (1) bullycocked hat of 18th c., or (2) hat first worn by Mr. William (Billy) Coke for shooting parties at Holkham, England.

bird cage Dome of stiff wide-mesh veiling pinned to crown of head covering face and ears. Worn in place of hat, especially in late 1950s.

biretta (bih-ret'-ah) **1.** See CLERICAL DRESS. **2.** 16th-c. round cap that later became square on top when hatters learned to use a rigid frame. Worn by clergy today. Also called *barrette*. Also spelled *birretta*, *berrette*.

birlet See HEADWEAR: BOURRELET.

bluebonnet Small-sized SCOTCH TAM (see under HEADWEAR), of blue wool with narrow TARTAN (see PLAIDS AND TARTANS) band fitting around head, black streamers in back, and colored pompon on top. Originally made in leather for protection when fighting. Also called *bonaid*. *Der.* Scottish, "bonnet."

boater **1.** Man's flattopped flat-brimmed straw hat with an oval crown, worn from 1880s to 1930s. Introduced about 1865 for children, later adopted by women. The **Henley boater**, popular since 1894, was a blue or gray felt hat of similar shape, named for Henley-on-Thames, England, site of boat races. Used for summer wear until about 1930. Also called *canotier*.



boater #1

2. Style copied in plastic for wear at political conventions.

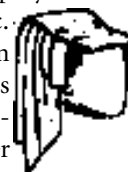
bobby's hat Hat with domed high crown and narrow turned-down brim worn by English policemen. *Der.* From slang British term "bobbies," meaning policemen.

bolero toque (bow-ler'-oh toke) Woman's small draped hat of fabric or fur, with black trimming extending up over the crown, worn in 1887.

bollinger Man's hat, worn from 1858 to late 1860s, having bowl-shaped crown with knob in center and narrow circular brim. First worn by British cab drivers, later adopted by gentlemen for country wear. Also called *hemispherical hat*.

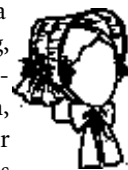
bonaid See HEADWEAR: BLUEBONNET.

bongrace (bohn-gras') **1.** Stiffened oblong woman's head-covering with drapery in back; worn in 16th and early 17th c. over a coif. **2.** Pendant flap in back of French hood, which was brought up over crown and fastened so as to project forward over forehead. Also called *burn grace*.



bongrace #1

bonnet **1.** Sometimes used as a generic term for headcovering, however is more specifically applied to headwear for women, children, and infants that fits over the back and top of head and ties with strings under chin. Bonnets were first worn in the Middle Ages. Women's bonnets of the 18th and 19th c. usually had a crown and a brim and were primarily an outdoor garment. Bonnet-style headcoverings predominated until about 1870, after which they were less fashionable. Rarely worn since 1920s except by babies and young girls. **2.** See HEADWEAR: BLUEBONNET.



bonnet #1 with bavolet c. 1850

bonnet à bec (bon-neh' ah beck) Woman's early 18th-c. bonnet that covered top of head and had a peak over the forehead. Lower edge touching the hair was called the *papillon*. Also called *bonnet en papillon* (bon-neh' on pah-pee'-yon).

bonnet babet See HEADWEAR: BABET BONNET.

bonnet en papillon See HEADWEAR: BONNET À BEC.

bonnet rouge (bon-neh' rooje) Red wool peaked-top cap, symbol of liberty, worn by patriots in French Revolution of late 18th c. *Der.* French, "red bonnet." Also called *liberty cap*.

bosses Decorative snoods of gold or linen covering thick coils of braided hair arranged at each side of face with a coverchief, or veil, over entire headdress. Worn from late 13th to end of 14th c. **Templers** were a 15th c. style of ornamental bosses that conceal the hair. Sometimes connected by band above forehead, sometimes part of headdress. Also spelled *templettes*, *temples*.

boudoir cap (boo'-dwar) Soft lace-trimmed cap with gathered crown and ruffled edge worn over woman's hair in bedroom in 19th and early 20th c.

Bourbon hat (boor'-bon) Blue satin hat decorated with pearls in a fleur-de-lis pattern. Popular in 1815 to celebrate Napoleon's defeat at Waterloo and return of King Louis XVIII, a member of the Bourbon royal family, to the throne.

bourrelet (boor'-lay) 15th-c. term for padded sausage-shaped roll worn by men and women for headdress, or as base of headdress. Also spelled *birlet*, *burlet*.



bourrelet 15th c.

bowler See HEADWEAR: DERBY.

breton (breh'-ton) Woman's off-the-face hat made with medium-sized rolled-back brim worn on back of head. Copied from hats worn by peasants of Brittany, France.



breton

bridal veil Traditionally a length of white net, lace, tulle, or silk illusion reaching to waist, hips, ankles, or floor in back. Chest length in front and worn over face during wedding—turned back after ceremony.

brim See in introduction to category: HEADWEAR.

broadbrim Wide-brimmed, low-crowned hat worn by members of the Society of Friends,

called Quakers. "Broadbrim" therefore became a nickname for Quakers.

brow band Ribbon, fabric, beaded band, or braid of hair around head worn low on forehead.

bubble beret See HEADWEAR: BERET #3.

bubble hat Puffed-out felt or straw hat, usually stiff rather than soft, made with tiny brim in early 1960s. Worn perched on top of head over bouffant hairstyles. Also called a *dome hat*.

bucket hat Casual hat made of fabric that has moderate-sized, sloping brim that may be stitched in concentric circles and is attached to flattopped, slightly cone-shaped crown.

bully-cocked See HEADWEAR: COCKED HAT.

bumper 1. Cap worn in the Netherlands by children, fitted at back of head, with wide thick roll of yarn around the face for protection. Also see child's PUDDING under HEADWEAR. **2.** Hat with a BUMPER BRIM (see under HEADWEAR).

bumper brim Thick rolled-back brim, surrounding various styles of crowns. Used in various widths on different styles of hats.

burlet See HEADWEAR: BOURRELET.

burnet/burnette 17th-c. hood or headdress.

burngrace See HEADWEAR: BONGRACE.

busby Tall cylindrical black fur or feathered military hat with cockade at top of center front. A bag-shaped drapery hangs from crown and is draped to the back. Worn by Hussars and certain guardsmen in the British army.

bush hat Large-brimmed Australian-type hat worn turned up on one side.

Worn in Australia and in Africa for safaris, also worn as part of uniform by Australian soldiers in World War II. Also called *caddie* or *caddy*.



bush hat

bustle back Puffs of ribbon or bows at back of hat, popular in 1930s.

butterfly cap Woman's small lace cap wired in shape of a butterfly, worn perched above forehead with lappets, jewels, and flower trimmings frequently added for court wear. Worn in 1750s and 1760s. Also called *fly cap*.

butterfly headdress 16th-c. term for a 15th-c. towering headdress made of sheer gauze wired to stand out like wings, and supported by a fez-shaped cap. Worn after this period by an order of nuns in Normandy, France.



butterfly headdress

bycocket/bycoket **1.** High-crowned hat with a wide brim peaked in front, and turned up in back worn by men in the Middle Ages. **2.** Similar hat called a *student bycocket* worn by Italian students in mid-20th c.

cabas (kah-bas') Version of PHRYGIAN CAP (see under HEADWEAR), made of beaver or velour, draped across forehead to conceal hair and ornamented in back. Created by New York milliner Sally Victor in 1956.

cabriole headdress (kab'-ree-oll) Rare fashion of about 1755, lasting only a few years, consisting of a miniature coach-and-six, or post chaise, worn by women on head instead of a cap. Coach was made of gold thread with six dappled gray horses made of blown glass. Also spelled *caprioll*. *Der.* French, "two-wheeled carriage."

cabriole bonnet (kab-ree-o-leh') Large bonnet, popular from the late 18th to mid-19th c., made with brim extending forward framing the face like a carriage top, but cut away in back to show hair. *Der.* French, "two-wheeled carriage."

cache-peigne (cash payn) Snood of net and ribbon worn by women to hold hair back, in the 1850s and 1860s. *Der.* French, "hide-comb."

caddie/caddy See HEADWEAR: BUSH HAT.

cadogan net See HEADWEAR: SNOOD.

cake hat Man's soft felt hat of 1890s with a low oval crown creased in manner similar to ALPINE HAT (see under HEADWEAR).

calash/calèche (ka-lash') Large hood worn from 1720 to 1790 and revived 1820 to 1839, made with hinged arches of whalebone or cane covered with fabric in manner similar to folding top of convertible car. Stands away from head, protecting bouffant hairstyles. *Der.* After hood of "French carriage" called *calèche*.



calash

calotte (ca-lot') **1.** A SKULLCAP (see under HEADWEAR) frequently made of leather or suede with a small matching projection like a stem on center top. **2.** See CLERICAL DRESS. **3.** Woman's small skullcap worn in 1940s and 1950s, sometimes with large jeweled pin. **4.** A cap worn by schoolboy, called a beanie (see HEADWEAR: SKULLCAP).

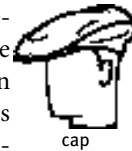
camargo hat (kam-are'-go) Small woman's evening hat with brim raised in front; worn in mid-1830s. *Der.* After Marie Ann de Cupis Camargo (1710–1770), celebrated dancer.

camelaurion (kamel-loh'-ree-yon) Coronet with dosed crown, worn by Roman Caesars and by Byzantine emperors.

campaign hat Broad-brimmed field hat with high crown first worn by Union soldiers in Civil War and later issued to entire U.S. army. Worn by soldiers in World War II with four dents in top of crown. Same as MOUNTIE'S HAT (see under HEADWEAR).

canotier See HEADWEAR: BOATER.

cap Head covering fitting more snugly to the head than a hat, frequently made with a visor-type front. Usually made of felt, leather, or fabric and worn for sports or informal occasions. In the 16th c., caps were worn by servants and apprentices; in the 19th c., gentlemen began to wear caps in the country or for sports, but not in town. From 1500 to 19th c., ladies wore caps indoors. After the mid-19th c., indoor caps were worn only by female servants and the elderly. See HEADWEAR: DAY CAP. *Der.* Latin, *cappa*, "a hooded cloak."



cap

cape hat Woman's half-hat made by attaching felt or fabric capelet to a springy metal clip that crosses the head from ear to ear, letting capelet fall over back of head.

capeline (cap-leen') **1.** See ARMOR. **2.** Second half of 18th c. woman's feather-trimmed wide-brimmed hat. **3.** Hood with attached cape worn in 1863 by women in rural areas. **4.** Wide floppy brimmed hat with small round crown worn since 1920s.

cap of maintenance Cap carried on a cushion before British sovereigns in coronation processions; sometimes used for mayors. Usually

made of scarlet velvet with ermine trim and symbolizing high rank. Also called *cap of dignity* and *cap of estate*.

capote (kah-pōat') Popular bonnet of 1830s with stiff brim framing the face, soft gathered crown, and ribbon bows tied at side or under chin. By 1890, worn mostly by older women.

capot-ribo (ka-poh' ree'-bow) Black velvet hat with long "curtain" (or veil), hanging below shoulders at sides and back. Popular in France after Napoleonic campaign in 1798.

capuche (cap-poosh') **1.** Sharp-pointed, pyramid-shaped hood worn by an order of monks, the Capuchins. **2.** See HEADWEAR: CAPUCHIN. **3.** Woman's hood attached to cloak worn in 17th c. **4.** Woman's silk-lined sunbonnet of mid-19th c.

Capuchin (kap'-yoo-shen) **1.** Hood worn outdoors in 16th, 17th, and 18th c. **2.** Hood and shoulder cape or long cloak, sometimes lined in colored or striped silk, called a *redingote* (red'-in-gote), worn by women in 18th c. for traveling. *Der.* From *capuche*, "cowl worn by Capuchin monks of Franciscan order." Also spelled *capuchon*, *capucine*, *capuche*.

capuchon (ka-poo-shon') **1.** See HEADWEAR: CAPUCHIN. **2.** Tiny bonnet made of flowers. Worn in 1877.

Capulet (cap-yew-let') Small hat conforming to shape of head and placed back from brow, sometimes with cuffed brim in front. *Der.* For cap worn by Juliet Capulet, heroine of Shakespeare's play *Romeo and Juliet*.

caravan Small type of collapsible bonnet of 1765 similar to the CALASH (see under HEADWEAR). Made of semicircular hoops that, when opened, drop a veil of white gauze over the face.

Carnaby cap See HEADWEAR: NEWSBOY CAP.

Caroline hat Man's hat made of Caroline beaver, imported from Carolinas in the British Colonies, worn in England from 1680s to mid-18th c.

cartwheel hat Woman's hat with extra wide stiff brim and low crown frequently made of straw.



casque (cask) Hat shaped like a helmet. *Der.* French, "helmet."

casquette (kass-ket') **1.** Cap with visor, similar to military officers' caps, adapted for women's headwear. **2.** Woman's straw cap worn in 1863 and 1864 similar to a GLENGARRY (see under HEADWEAR) with additional short brim front and back. Trimmed with black velvet ribbon and ostrich feathers.

castor Hat made entirely of beaver fur popular in 17th and 19th c. If rabbit fur was added, it was called a **demi-castor**. The 17th-c. trade term for a man's castor hat in the 17th century was **codovec**.

cater cap (kay-ter) Used in 16th and 17th c. to describe a square cap worn at universities, now called *mortarboard*. See ACADEMIC COSTUME.

caudebec (kawd'-ee-bek) An imitation beaver hat made of felt worn from end of 17th throughout 18th c. Also called *cawdebink* or *cordybeck hat*.

caul (kol) **1.** Mesh cap that encloses the hair and is often the work of a goldsmith. Frequently called a *fret* in medieval times. Also see HEADWEAR: BOSSES and CRISPINE. Usually worn by unmarried girls and by women of high status during the medieval period. **2.** See WIGS AND HAIRPIECES. **3.** In 18th and 19th c. used to describe soft crown of bonnet or cap.



ca valier hat **1.** A wide-brimmed velvet hat trimmed with ostrich plumes. **2.** Brimmed hat with one side turned up worn by Theodore Roosevelt and his Rough Riders in Spanish American War.

ceyphalos (ser-rif-ah'-los) Wide head band or fillet worn by women in ancient Greece.

chaffers See HEADWEAR: ENGLISH HOOD.

chain hat Decorative close-fitting cap made with lengths of chain—some linked together, others dangling. Decorative item of body jewelry introduced in the late 1960s.

chapeau (cha-po') French word meaning hat or cap.

chapeau à la Charlotte See HEADWEAR: CHARLOTTE.

chapeau bras (sha-po' bra) **1.** Man's flat three-cornered hat, evenly COCKED (see under

HEADWEAR) or crescent-shaped, made expressly to be carried under arm; from 1760s to 1830s in France, England, and United States. By 1830, generally called *broken hat*. Also see HEADWEAR: OPERA HAT. **2.** Woman's crush bonnet, or CALASH (see under HEADWEAR), that folded small enough to be carried in handbag or under the arm. Worn to concerts and opera in early 19th c. England. *Der.* French, "arm-hat."

chapeau claque (sha-po' klack) See HEADWEAR: OPERA HAT.

chapeau cloche Small crowned hat with wide drooping brim worn by women in 1860s to protect face from the sun.

chapel cap Small round cap that fits on the back of the head, sometimes lace-trimmed, matched to choir robes, and worn by women of choir for church services.

chapel cap/chapel veil Small circle of lace or tulle, frequently edged with a ruffle, worn by women over top of head while inside a church.

chaperon (shap'-er-ohn) **1.** Used as general designation for a hood during the Middle Ages. Worn largely by men but also occasionally by working-class women.

2. Anglo-French term for a fitted hood cut in one with a shoulder cape (called a *gole*, *collet*, *gorget*, or *guleron*), which was worn from the late 12th c. until the mid-15th c. The hood had a long pendant tail called a **liripipe** (lir'-ee-peep) in 14th c.



chaperon #2
with liripipe

3. Draped version of the chaperon popular in the 15th c. in which the cape was rolled and tied with the extended tail of the hood to form a turbanlike headress. **4.** Woman's soft hood in the 17th c. Also spelled *chaperone*, *chaperonne*. Also called *cappuccio*.

chaplet **1.** Originally a garland of flowers for the head worn by Anglo-Saxon men and women on festive occasions. **2.** In 15th c. such a garland was worn only by a bride. **3.** Circlet, or metal band set with gems, worn by both men and women in 14th, 15th, and 16th c. Also called a *coronal of goldsmithry*. **4.** In late 14th and 15th cs., a headband of twisted silk or

satin wound around a padded roll. **5.** 17th-c. term used for a short rosary or set of beads worn on the neck.

Charlotte Very large brimmed hat with lace ruffle at edge, worn drooping over forehead, sometimes worn over a lacy cap. Crown richly decorated with wide loops and bows of ribbon. Worn in mid-1780s. *Der.* Named for Queen Charlotte of England (1744–1818), married to George III of England. Style later returned to popularity somewhat modified in late 19th and early 20th cs. Both styles also called *chapeau à la Charlotte*.

Charlotte Corday cap Indoor cap worn in daytime in 1870s, made with puffed muslin crown gathered into a band, sometimes had a ruffle around edge, sometimes with lappets. *Der.* Named for Charlotte Corday, who assassinated Marat, a leader of the French Revolution.

chechia Adaptation for women in the late 1930s and early 1940s of a felt hat with a tassel—similar to a fez but more peaked in shape—that was worn by Algerian and Moroccan children.

cheek wrappers See HEADWEAR: DORMEUSE.

chef's hat Tall, white full-crowned fabric hat starched to stand up stiffly. Set into the headband with 100 pleats, which originally indicated that the chef could cook eggs 100 ways. Also called *hundred pleater*. The more important the chef—the taller the hat.

chignon cap Small cap made in a variety of colors and fabrics worn over the chignon in the 1930s and 1940s. Popular again in the 1960s and 1970s—usually made of crocheted wool—and called a *bun-warmer* or *bun snood*.

chignon strap Band of ribbon fastened to woman's hat that passes around back of head and under the chignon to hold hat firmly. Worn in the 1860s and 1870s, again in the 1940s and 1950s.

chimney pot hat See HEADWEAR: TOP HAT.

chin stays Term used in 1830s for ruffles of tulle or lace added to bonnet strings forming a frill when tied under chin. Synonym: *mentonnières* (men-ton-yehr').

chip bonnet Coarse, inexpensive straw bonnet made of strips or shavings of wood, or

woody material, imported from Italy and used for millinery in the 19th c.

chou (shoo) **choux** (*pl.*) Soft, crushed-crown hat similar to **MOBCAP** (see under **HEADWEAR**). *Der.* French, “cabbage.”

chukka hat (chuh'-ka) Domed hat with small brim copied from hats worn by polo players. Similar to, but not as high as, English policeman's hat. *Der.* Named for divisions of polo game called chukkas.

circumfolding hat See **HEADWEAR: OPERA HAT**.

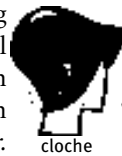
claque See **HEADWEAR: OPERA HAT**.

Clara Bow hat Trademark for various styles of felt hats for women in late 1920s. The beret and cloche styles were the most popular. *Der.* Named after *Clara Bow*, famous movie star of the 1920s.

Clarissa Harlowe bonnet/hat Pictured in 1857 as a wide-brimmed, lace-trimmed hat with drooping sides and a small rounded crown with large ostrich plume placed so it curved from the crown over the back brim of hat. In 1879, described as a bonnet made of leghorn straw (see **HEADWEAR: LEGHORN HAT**) with a large brim lined with velvet, worn tilted on the forehead—popular until 1890s. *Der.* From heroine in novel *Clarissa, or the History of a Young Lady*, by Samuel Richardson, published in 1747–48.

clip hat See **HEADWEAR: BICYCLE-CLIP HAT**.

cloche (klohsh) Deep-crowned hat with very narrow brim or brimless, fitting head closely, almost concealing all of the hair. Worn pulled down almost to eyebrows, fashionable in 1920s and again in 1960s. *Der.* French, “bell.”



cloche

coal-scuttle bonnet Bonnet of mid-19th c. with a large, stiff brim with peak in center front. *Der.* Shaped like the scoop called a scuttle that was used to pick up coal and put it into the fire.

cocked hat 1. Man's hat worn from late 17th to early 19th c. with wide brim. To avoid weather sag and deterioration, it became the fashion to turn up brim, which



cocked hat

was sometimes fastened with buttons and loops to crown—first one side, then two sides, and eventually three sides forming a tricorne. Many variations developed, each involving individual details. Named types include: (1) **bully-cock**, an 18th-c. term for a broad-brimmed, three-cornered cocked hat; (2) **continental hat**, a three-cornered hat with a wide upturned brim worn with the point placed at center front. Worn by the Continental army during the American Revolution. Rank of officers was denoted by various colors of cockades worn on the left side of the hat; (3) **Denmark cock** Man's three-cornered hat of the second half of the 18th c. with three sides of the hat turned up, the back higher than the front; (4) **Dettigen cock** Man's cocked hat of the 18th c. with the brim turned up equally in three sections; (5) **Kevenhuller cock** Man's three-cornered hat worn from 1740s to the 1760s, cocked with the front forming a peak and turned up higher in back. (6) **Monmouth cock** Broad-brimmed hat of the second half of the 17th c. turned up or cocked in back. Also see **HEADWEAR: TRICORNE**. 2. Contemporary hat inspired by any of the historic versions of a cocked hat.

cockle hat Hat trimmed with a scallop shell, worn by pilgrims returning from the Holy Land during the crusades in the 11th to 13th c. *Der.* French, *coquille*, “shell.”

coffer headdress Woman's small box-shaped headdress of 14th c. usually worn over top of hair with coiled braids over the ears.

coif (kwaf) 1. White headdress worn by nuns of some orders under the veil. 2. From 12th to 15th c., linen headcovering similar to a baby's bonnet tied under chin. Art of the period shows it to have been worn by individuals from many levels of society and by soldiers and knights under metal helmets. By the 16th c. it was more likely to be worn by the aged and the learned professions. Coif may be a modern term applied to this headwear. 3. From 16th to 19th c., an under cap worn mainly by women. In the late 16th c. and early 17th c. the cap was sometimes embroidered, with sides



coif #2
13th c.

curved forward to cover the ears. These were called *cheeks-and-ears*. Similar caps were called *orrelets*, or *round-earl caps*. **4.** Also see HEADWEAR: BIGGIN.

commander's cap See HEADWEAR: ASTRONAUT'S CAP.

commode 1. A silk-covered wire frame of the late 17th and early 18th c. that was used to support the high FONTANGES headdress (see under HEADWEAR). Also called *mont la haut* (mont lah hoh) and *palisade*. **2.** English name for the fontages headdress.

commodore cap Flattopped cap with a visor or fashionable for women for boating and sports, including bicycling in 1890s. Similar to YACHTING CAP (see under HEADWEAR).

communion veil A sheer net elbow-length veil worn by girls for first communion in the Catholic Church.

conductor's cap Cap with crown shaped like a pillbox with visor-shaped brim, frequently trimmed with braid around the crown and an insignia in front. Worn placed straight on forehead by train conductors.

continental hat See HEADWEAR: COCKED HAT #2.

conversation bonnet See HEADWEAR: POKE BONNET.

coolie hat 1. Chinese hat made of straw that may take many forms—mushroom-shaped with knob at top, bowl-shaped, conical flared shape, and a flared shape with a peak in the center. All are made of bamboo, palm leaves, or straw, and stand away from the head, forming almost a parasol against the sun. **2.** Copies of the above styles made in felt and straw for general wear. *Der.* Chinese, “kuli,” an unskilled worker.

copotain (ko-poh-tan') Man's or woman's hat with a high conical crown rounded at top and medium-sized brim usually turned up at the sides and back. Made of beaver, fur, or leather trimmed with wide band. First mentioned in 1508, but very fashionable from 1560 to 1620. Revived in 1640s to 1665; then called the **sugarloaf hat** due to its resem-



copotain or
sugarloaf hat

blance to a loaf of sugar. Also called *pantile*. Also spelled *copatain*, *copintank*, *coppintanke*, *copytank*, *coptank*.

cornet 1. See HEADWEAR: HENNIN.

2. Dark-colored velvet cap similar to a BONGRACE (see under HEADWEAR) worn from 17th to 19th c. **3.** Day cap with rounded caul; tied under the chin, in first half of 19th c. (see HEADWEAR: CAUL #1). Also spelled *cornette*. **4.** Synonym for MORTARBOARD (see under ACADEMIC DRESS).

coronet (kor'-o-net) **1.** Crown that denotes rank below that of sovereign. Nobility of Great Britain have seven different styles of crowns for prince of the blood, younger son, nephew, duke, marquis, earl, viscount, and baron. **2.** Band or wreath worn by women on the head like a TIARA (see under HEADWEAR). **3.** 14th-c. term for open crown worn by nobility. Also spelled *coronal*.

cosack forage cap Visored cap with soft crown set on band worn toward back of head rather than pulled down on forehead. Made in napped suede fabric in natural, black, or loden green. Adapted from caps worn by Russian Cossacks and accepted for general wear by men and women in the late 1960s. Also see FORAGE CAP.

cosack hat Tall brimless hat of fur worn by Russian horsemen and cavalrymen. Copied for men's winter hat in the United States and England in 1950s and 1960s.

cottage bonnet Straw bonnet fitting head closely with brim projecting beyond the cheeks worn from 1808 to 1870s. Early styles were worn over a cap. Later styles had upturned pleated brim with satin lining.

couel British turban headdress of 15th c. in red for commoners, and black for nobility.

counter fillet Late 14th and early 15th c., the fillet or band securing a woman's veil.

Courrèges hat (Koor'-rej) Fashion helmet shaped similar to World War I aviator's helmet. Introduced in 1964 by French couturier André Courrèges as a result of universal interest in astronauts.

cove rchief / cou verchief / cou verchef Norman term meaning head rail, a draped Saxon

head covering made of different fabrics and colors worn by women of all classes from medieval times to the 16th c.

cowboy hat Large wide-brimmed felt hat with crown worn creased or standing up in cone shape with the brim rolled up on both sides and dipping in front. Sometimes with hat-band of leather and silver. Worn in the United States by Western cowboys to shade face and neck. Also called **ten-gallon hat** when extra tall and uncreased. Also see HEADWEAR: SOMBRERO and STETSON.®



cowboy hat:
ten gallon type

coxcomb/cockscorb Hood trimmed with strip of notched red cloth at the apex worn by licensed court jesters in 16th and 17th cs.

crants Garland of flowers or chaplet made of gold and gems worn by women from Medieval times to 18th c. Also spelled *craunæ, graundiaæ*.

crisp 16th-c. term for a woman's VEIL (see under HEADWEAR).

crispine (kris'-pihn) An extra band at the forehead used during the late 14th c. to keep the elaborate net (see HEADWEAR: CAUL OR FRET) in place. A veil draped over the crispine and caul was referred to as a **crispinette** (kris'-pin-ett).

crispinette See HEADWEAR: CRISPINE.

crocheted cap (kro-shadé') Any type cap that is hand-crocheted. Styles vary—some are helmet-shaped—others made like TAMS (see under HEADWEAR). Some styles are trimmed with metal or plastic PAILLETES attached at intervals.

crosscloth **1.** Triangular KERCHIEF of 16th and 17th cs. worn by women with a COIF or CAUL tied under chin or at back of head. Frequently embroidered to match the coif. (See cross-references under HEADWEAR.) **2.** A brow band worn in bed to prevent illness, or as a beauty aid to remove wrinkles. Worn by men and women from 16th to 18th c. Also called *forehead cloth*. Also see FRONTLET.

crow **1.** See in category heading: HEADWEAR. **2.** Circlet of precious metal and gems worn by kings and queens. **3.** Bridal headpiece worn

with veil. **4.** A garland or wreath worn on the head as an ornament or sign of honor.

crow hats Hats of African inspiration that are round, flat-topped, and sometimes have leather medallions with maps of Africa in the colors of African and West Indian countries. Worn by African-Americans in late 1980s and 1990s.

crusader hood Snug-fitting hood cut in one piece with a small shoulder cape. Originally made of chain mail—later copied in knits for winter sportswear.

crusher hat Comfortable man's snap-brim felt hat that can be made into a compact roll to fit in pocket or pack for travel. Introduced about 1900 and popular in the 1920s and again in the 1980s and after.

Cumberland hat Man's hat with 8" high tapered crown and small brim turned up at the sides, worn in 1830s. Also called *hat à la William Tell*.

curch Untrimmed close-fitting woman's cap worn in Colonial America. Also spelled *kerche*.

cushion headdress 19th-c. term for large padded roll worn as headdress by women in first half of the 15th c.

dandy hat Woman's high-crowned, roll-brimmed hat decorated with jet embroidery, feathers, and a veil. Introduced by New York milliner Sally Victor in mid-1950s.

Davy Crockett cap Coonskin (raccoon fur) cap with tail of animal hanging down back. Worn in Colonial America by woodsmen and pioneers and named after David Crockett, frontiersman and politician, who fought and died at the Alamo in Texas in 1836. Popular for young boys in 1950s and 1960s after wide exposure on television programs, at which time the term was copyrighted. Copyright now applies to a wide variety of apparel.

day cap Muslin cap worn by adult women indoors and sometimes under bonnets outdoors in the 18th and 19th c. By the second half of the 19th c., only elderly women continued to wear these caps.



day cap, first
half of 19th c.

deerstalker Checked or tweed cap with visor on both front and back and ear laps that can

be buttoned or tied to top of crown, worn from 1860s on. Associated with pictures of Sherlock Holmes, the fictional detective created by Sir Arthur Conan Doyle. *Der.* Originally worn in England for hunting, including “stalking deer.” Also called *fore-and-after*.



deerstalker

demi-castor See HEADWEAR: CASTOR.

demi-coronal See HEADWEAR: TIARA.

Denmark cock See HEADWEAR: COCKED HAT.

derby American name for a hat, called a **bowler** in England, first worn about 1860, made of hard felt with a domed crown and narrow stiff brim rolled up on the sides. Usually black, but brown and fawn colors were worn with NORFOLK JACKET (see under COATS AND JACKETS). *Der.* The British version was named for the hatter William Bowler, about 1850 to 1860, although shape dates from 1820s. The American version was named for Earl of Derby and an English horse race called the Derby; pronounced *darby* in England.

derby
or bowler

desert fatigue cap Visor cap of cotton poplin made with soft crown set on wide band, worn with top crushed down at sides. Copied from German forage cap worn in World War II and accepted for general wear in late 1960s.

diadem (dy'-ah-dem) **1.** A crown. **2.** Decorative headdress resembling a crown.

diadem cap (dy'-ah-dem) Bathing cap of 1870s usually of oiled silk shaped like a shower cap with a band and upstanding ruffle in front and ties under the chin.

diadem fanchon bonnet (dy'-ah-dem fan'-shon) Lace and velvet bonnet of late 1860s with brim forming a halo. Made with two sets of bonnet strings—one tied under CHIGNON (see under HAIRSTYLES) in back, the other, trimmed with RUCHING, loosely tied under the chin.

diamanté headband (dya-mahn-tay') Band of fabric set with artificial sparking jewels (example: rhinestones) and worn around head, low on forehead during Edwardian period (1890–1910) and in late 1920s.

Diana Vernon hat/Diana Vernon bonnet

Wide-brimmed, shallow-crowned straw bonnet of the late 1870s with one side of the brim turned up and trimmed with a rosette. Wide streamers came from underside of brim to tie under the chin. *Der.* Named for the heroine of *Rob Roy*, 1817 English novel by Sir Walter Scott.

dink/dinky See HEADWEAR: SKULLCAP.

Directoire bonnet (dir-eck'-twa) Bonnet tied under the chin, fitting close over the ears, with a high flaring front brim. Worn in late 1870s through early 1880s. Inspired by hats worn during the French *Directoire Period* (1795–1799), but not known by this name at that time.

Dolley Madison hood Lace-trimmed opera hood resembling a DUST CAP (see under HEADWEAR) with a deep ruffle of lace falling around the face and neck. Worn toward back of head and secured under chin with broad ribbon ties. Popular at end of 19th c. Also spelled *Dolly*. *Der.* Named after Dolley Madison, wife of James Madison, President of the United States, 1809 to 1817.

doll hat Miniature hat worn in different ways at different time periods. In the late 1930s, pushed forward on the head and held on with an elastic band around back of head. Popular after being worn by Jacqueline Kennedy when she was First Lady in early 1960s, when it was attached to the back of head with combs or pins and sometimes had a veil. Reintroduced in 1984 to perch on the front of the head in various shapes—square, round, etc.

dome hat See HEADWEAR: BUBBLE HAT.

doo rag Headcovering with the appearance of a head scarf tied in the back with long, hanging tail. Usually made from brightly colored fabrics or leather.

dorelet (dor-reh'-lay) Term used in Middle Ages for woman's hair net ornamented with jewels. Also spelled *dorlet*.

dormeuse/dormouse (dor-muse') Ribbon-trimmed white cap with a puffed crown and falling lappets (see under HEADWEAR) trimmed with lace, called *wings*, popularly known as **cheek wrappers**. Worn in the house by women

in second half of 18th c. Also called a *French nightcap*.

dressmaker's brim Hat brim, usually on a fabric hat, that has closely spaced rows of machine stitching or stitched tucks around the brim.

drum major's hat Very tall hat with chin band, frequently made of fur in black or white, worn by the leader of a band or drum major for parade functions. Similar to BEARSKIN CAP (see under HEADWEAR).

dunce cap Tall conical cap, sometimes marked with a D, formerly worn in school by students who failed in their lessons. Sometimes wrongly called FOOL'S CAP (see under HEADWEAR).

dunstable Hat of plaited straw originally made in Dunstable, England.

dust cap Cap made of handkerchief or circular piece of fabric hemmed on outer edge and gathered by elastic, worn by women or maids for housework from 19th to early 20th c.

Dutch-boy cap Cap with visor and soft wide crown usually made of navy blue wool.

Dutch cap Cap worn by women and girls in Volendam, Holland, made of lace or embroidered muslin fitted to the head with a slight peak at the crown and flaring wings at sides of face. Made fashionable by *Irene Castle*, famous ballroom dancer in 1920s. Sometimes used as bridal cap. Also called *Dutch bonnet*.

earmuffs **1.** Two disks of wool, fur, felt, or other fabric worn to keep the ears warm in winter. Disks may be fastened to a strap that goes overhead and ties under the chin, or fastened to a springy metal band that fits over top of the head. **2.** A pair of flaps on sides of a cap that may be turned up and buttoned at top of cap, or left down to cover the ears.

Easter bonnet Another name for an Easter hat. May be any type of hat, not necessarily tied under the chin. Also see EASTER PARADE.

Egham, Staines, and Windsor Nickname used in early 19th c. for three-cornered TRICORNE HAT (see under HEADWEAR). *Der.* From geographical location of three English towns that form a triangle on map.

eight-point cap Policeman's cap, or utility cap, with soft crown and a stiff visor in front. Crown is made by sewing together eight

straight-edged wedges of fabric making an octagon-shaped crown.

elastic round hat Patented collapsible hat of 1812, which could be flattened by releasing steel spring and carried under the arm. Forerunner of the Gibus (see under HEADWEAR: OPERA HAT).

Empire bonnet/Empire cap (em'-pire or ohm-peer') Small outdoor bonnet of 1860s shaped like a baby's cap with no veil or curtains in back.

engineer's cap Round cap with visor worn by railroad workers, usually of blue-and-white striped cotton. The crown is box-pleated onto the band. Adopted in 1960s by young people for sportswear.

English cottage bonnet See HEADWEAR: BIBI BONNET.

English hood Woman's headdress worn from 1500s to 1540s, sometimes made of black fabric wired to form a peak or gable over the forehead with long velvet lappets at side and the back draped in thick folds over the shoulders. When these lappets were embroidered, they were called **chaffers** (chaf'-ers). After 1525, the back drapery became two long pendant flaps. Also called *gable* and *pediment headdress*, by 19th-c. writers.



English hood

envoy hat Man's winter hat similar to COSACK HAT (see under HEADWEAR) with leather or fur crown and fur or fabric edge. Popular in late 1960s.

ermine cap See LETTICE CAP.

Eton cap Close-fitting cap with a short visor, modeled after those worn at Eton College in England. Popular in fabrics to match coats for young boys in the United States in 1920s and 1930s.

Eugénie hat (yoo-je'-nee) Small hat, with brim rolled back on either side, worn by Greta Garbo in a film about the Empress Eugenie and popular in the 1930s. Worn tilted sideways and to the front, and often trimmed with one long ostrich plume



Eugenie hat

in the side roll. *Der.* Named for Eugénie, Empress of France.

fanchon (fan-shon') Small lace-trimmed head scarf, or the lace trimming on sides of an outdoor bonnet or day cap, worn from 1830s on.

fanchon cap (fan-shon') Small indoor cap of tulle or lace with side pieces covering the ears, worn by women from 1840s to 1860s.

fantail hat Three-cornered hat with wide brim, cocked or turned up at sides, with point in front; the back, somewhat-shaped semi-circular, resembled a fan. Worn in the last quarter of 18th c. by men and women for horseback riding.

fashion helmet Any helmet designed as a fashion item rather than for protection. May be made of leather, fabric, fur, plastic, or other materials. Types include *Courrèges*, *Paco Rabanne*, *Pucci*, and *chain helmets*.

fatigue cap U.S. armed forces cap usually made of twill fabric in style similar to ENGINEER'S CAP (see under HEADWEAR).

fedora Felt hat with medium-sized brim and high crown with lengthwise crease from front to back. Originally worn by men but now also styled for women with turned-up back brim. *Der.* Popular for men after Victorian Sardou's play *Fedora* was produced in 1882. Now a classic men's hat style.



fez **1.** Red felt hat shaped like truncated cone with long black silk tassel hanging from center of crown worn by Turkish men until 1925; also worn in Syria, Palestine, and Albania. Also worn by the "Shriners," an auxiliary order of the Masons. **2.** Basic shape, without tassel, copied for women's hats in the West. *Der.* Named for town of Fez in Morocco.

fillet **1.** Narrow band tied around the hair, usually as a brow band, worn from 13th to 19th c. **2.** Stiffened band of linen worn with the BARBETTE, FRET, or both in 13th and 14th c. (see under HEADWEAR). **3.** See HEADWEAR: HEADBAND # 1 and #2.

Fitzherbert hat Modified form of BALLOON HAT (see under HEADWEAR), with wide oval brim and low crown of puffed fabric, worn by women in mid-1780s.

flandan (flahn'-dahn) Late 17th-c.: a PINNER OR LAPPET (see under HEADWEAR) fastened to woman's day cap.

Flemish hood See HEADWEAR: BEGUIN.

flight deck cap See HEADWEAR: ASTRONAUT'S CAP.

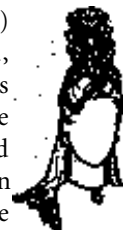
flower-pot hat Man's hat of 1830s with crown shaped like a truncated cone, or upside-down flower pot, with large turned-up brim. Also called *turf hat*.

fly cap See HEADWEAR: BUTTERFLY CAP.

fold-up hat Straw sun hat with pleated brim and crown that folds to a 6" roll for carrying in pocket or purse.

follow-me-lads Long ribbon streamers of 1850s and 1860s hanging from back of girl's bonnet.

fontanges (fawn'-tanjz) /fontange Woman's starched, pleated, lace-and-ribbon head dress placed on top of upswept hairstyle in late 17th and early 18th c. Said to have originated about 1679 when Marie Angélique de Scorraille de Roussilles, la Duchesse de Fontanges, a favorite of Louis XIV who was out riding with the King, used her lace and jeweled garter to fasten back her hair, which had become disarranged. Also called *tower headdress* and *high head*. The COMMODE (see under HEADWEAR) was used to support the headdress.



fontanges

fontanges hat (fawn'-tanjz) Tiny hat covering crown of head trimmed with lace, ribbon, and flowers with a sheet veil or curtain in back. A band of ribbon, edged with fluting, went under the chin. Featured in *Godey's Magazine* in 1876.

fool's cap Of three types: (a) forward-curved peaked cap with donkey's ears; (b) a cockscomb in place of peak and without ears; (c) two hornlike peaks at sides of head. Bells were added to each style. Also called *jester's cap*. Also see JESTER'S COSTUME.

football helmet Molded plastic helmet that conforms closely to the head, covering the ears. Made with nose guard, consisting of curved plastic strips attached to sides, and decorated

with symbols indicating team. Worn by all contact football players.

forage cap **1.** Cap with a visor adapted from the military for small boys in first half of 19th c. Made with circular felt crown, head band stiffened with cane, a tassel from center of crown, and sometimes glossy black leather straps under the chin. **2.** Small cap similar to a *KEPI* (see under *HEADWEAR*), formerly worn by soldiers in U.S. Army.

fore-and-after See *HEADWEAR: DEERSTALKER*.

foundling bonnet Small, soft-crowned, stiff-brimmed bonnet of 1880s usually made of plush and fastened with ties under chin.

frelan Late 17th-c. term for woman's *BONNET* and *PINNER* (see under *HEADWEAR*) worn together. Also spelled *freland*, *frelange*.

French beret See *HEADWEAR: BERET #2*.

French hood Woman's headdress, consisting of a small bonnet over a stiffened frame, worn at back of head and trimmed with *RUCHING*. Front border was curved forward to cover the ears and had two ornamental gold bands or *BILLIMENTS*. A back flap either enclosed the hair or was folded forward over head, projecting above forehead (see *HEADWEAR: BONGRACE*). Fashionable from 1521 to 1590 and worn by some until 1630.



French hood
c. 16th c.

French sailor hat Large navy blue or white cotton *TAM* (see under *HEADWEAR*), stitched to stiff navy blue headband and trimmed with red pompon at center of crown. Originally worn by French seamen pulled down on forehead with top exactly horizontal.

fret Mesh snood or skullcap made of gold mesh or fabric worked in an openwork lattice design and sometimes decorated with jewels. Worn by women from the 13th to early 16th c. Also called a *caul*.

frigate cap Utility visored cap of mid-20th c. with flat top slanting toward back. Made of water-repellent black silky rayon with cord and buttons on front for trim. Copied from caps worn by merchant seamen in the 19th c.

frontlet Decorative *BROW BAND* worn in medieval times under a *COVERCHIEF* or *VEIL*. Also

worn in 16th and early 17th c. with *COIF* or *CAUL*. (See *CROSS-REFERENCES* under *HEADWEAR*.)

funnel hat Brimless tall conical hat of felt or fabric worn by women in the 1930s and 1940s.

gable bonnet/hat Woman's hat of 1884 with front brim angled like a Gothic arch.

gable headress See *HEADWEAR: ENGLISH HOOD*.

Gainsborough hat Large, graceful brimmed hat worn from late 1860s to 1890s and copied periodically since. Made of velvet, straw, or beaver, frequently turned up on one side and trimmed with ostrich plumes. *Der.* Named after the 18th-c. British painter *Gainsborough*, who painted many portraits of ladies in this type of hat, including portrait of *Duchess of Devonshire*.

galatea hat (gal'-ah-teh-ah) Child's hat of plaited straw with sailor crown and turned-up brim worn in 1890s.

Garbo hat Slouch hat worn so frequently by Greta Garbo in the 1930s that it is sometimes called by her name. See *HEADWEAR: SLOUCH HAT*. Also see *GARBO, GRETA*.

garden hat **1.** Woman's hat of 1860s made of muslin with flat top cut in oval shape. Ruffles or long pieces of muslin hung down to protect the wearer from the sun. Hat was frequently made with ribbon trim. **2.** Large-brimmed floppy hat of horsehair or straw worn in 1920s and 1930s for afternoon teas and garden parties. **3.** Large-brimmed straw hat currently worn when gardening to protect face from the sun.

garrison cap See *HEADWEAR: OVERSEAS CAP*.

gaucho hat (gow-cho) Wide-brimmed black felt hat made with medium-high flat crown. Fastened under chin with leather thong. Originally worn by South American cowboys, it was adapted for women in late 1960s and worn with gaucho pants (see under *PANTS*). Also called *sombrero córdobes* (som-brer'-oh kor-dob'-ehs). *Der.* Spanish "cowboy" of Argentina, Chile, and Uruguay.

German helmet Metal helmet made with small visor and a spike on the top decorated with large gold eagle on front. Worn by Germans in World War I and adopted by teenage boys in the late 1960s. Also called a *pickelhaube*.

Gibus See OPERA HAT.

glengarry cap Military cloth cap creased to fold flat like an OVERSEAS CAP (see under HEADWEAR) usually with tartan band at edge, regimental badge at side front, and two black ribbon streamers in back. Part of the uniform of Scottish Highland regiments, and adapted for sportswear by women and small boys in mid-19th c. *Der.* After Glengarry, a valley in Invernesshire, Scotland.

gob hat See HEADWEAR: SAILOR HAT.

goffered veil 19th-c. term for linen head-dress, with fluted or GOFFERED frill surrounding the face. Has back drapery to shoulders, worn from 1350 to 1420. *Nebula headdress* is a 19th-c. synonym.

gondolier's hat (gon-doh-lee') Straw hat with a medium-sized brim and a shallow, slightly tapered crown with a flat top. Wide ribbon trims the crown and long streamers extend down the back; the color of the ribbon denoted length of service. Worn formerly by gondoliers of Venice, Italy. Often purchased as a tourist souvenir by visitors to Venice.

granny bonnet Child's bonnet of early 1890s with ribbon ties under the chin, broad flaring brim, and gathered conventional crown decorated with ribbons. *Der.* Styled after the bonnets that grandmothers wore.

Greek fisherman's cap Soft cap of denim or wool with crown higher in front than in back. Elaborately trimmed with braid on visor and at seam where visor meets crown. Styled in black wool, blue denim, or white and worn for sportswear or boating in 1980s by both men and women.

hair net Fine cap-shaped net worn over the hair to keep it in place. Sometimes made of knotted human hair and nearly invisible. Also made of chenille, gold, or silver threads and worn as decoration. Also see HEADWEAR: SNOOD.

halo hat See HEADWEAR: PAMELA.

hard hat Protective covering for the head. Made of metal or hard plastic in classic PITH HELMET shape or similar to a baseball BATTER'S CAP (see under HEADWEAR). Held away from the head by foam lining to absorb impact. Worn by construction workers and others

subject to work hazards. In late 1960s, the term "hard hat" took on political connotations when U.S. construction workers expressed their sentiments against peace advocates.

harlequin Hat with brim, wide at sides and cut straight across front and back, worn in 1938. *Der.* From *Harlequin*, a part played by an actor in 16th to 18th c. Italian comedies called *commedia dell'arte*.

harvest hat Believed to be the term used for the first straw hats worn by farmers in the United States.

hat Sometimes used as a generic term for headwear, however the term is more specifically applied to headwear that consists of a crown and a brim and that usually does not tie under the chin. A decorative accessory or one worn for warmth, hats can be made of felt, straw, fur, fabric, leather, or synthetic materials. The Greek petasos (see HEADWEAR: PETASOS #1) was among the earliest of brimmed hats. Medieval hat styles included the COPOTAIN (see under HEADWEAR) and until c. 1660 men wore hats indoors as well as out and in church. Women did not generally wear hats except for traveling until after the late 16th c., when they wore either hats or bonnets for outdoors and for church. From the late 1950s, bouffant hairstyles, and later the use of wigs and falls, made it difficult to wear hats and although hats have been periodically fashionable since then, they are worn much less frequently than in the past.

Hat à la William Tell See HEADWEAR: CUMBERLAND HAT.

hat cap 18th-c. term for a day cap worn under a hat mainly by women. Also called *undercap*.

hat pin Straight pin from 3" to 12" long with bead or jewel at top. Used by women to secure their hats in late 19th through early 20th c., becoming less common after hair was bobbed in the 1920s.

havelock 1. Cloth covering for military cap extending to shoulders in back in order to protect the neck from sun. *Der.* Named for Sir Henry Havelock, British general in India. 2. See HEADWEAR: AUTOMOBILE CAP.

headband **1.** Strip of leather, cord, or fabric bound around the head horizontally across the forehead. Also called a *brow band*. **2.** Band worn over top of the head from ear to ear as an ornament or to keep hair in place since ancient times. **3.** Band at bottom edge of hat crown.

head rail See HEADWEAR: COVERCHIEF.

head wrap In 1980s, a scarf, bandanna, ribbon, or piece of fabric worn in carefree manner around the head to frame the face or as a BROW BAND (see under HEADWEAR).

heart-shaped headdress Rolled woman's headdress of 1420 to 1450, forming a heart-shaped peak in center front. Raised on sides to show netting coming down over the ears. Usually worn with a long veil. The style was called a *miter* by 19th-c. writers.

helmet Protective covering for the head worn primarily to prevent injury, particularly by armed forces and for various sports. First worn by Greeks and Romans with feathered crests; *chain mail* was used during the Crusades; cast metal used from 14th c. on for knights' helmets, which usually had a visor. In the late 1950s, space helmets were introduced for astronauts, and in the 1960s helmet-shaped hats were introduced as a fashion accessory. Also see ARMOR: BURGONET and MORION.

hemispherical hat See HEADWEAR: BOLLINGER.

Henley boater See HEADWEAR: BOATER.

hennin (hen'-in) Woman's tall steeple-shaped headdress worn in Burgundy during the second half of 15th c. Supported by a wire frame and worn tilted back with a long sheer veil hanging from tip down to floor, or caught up as drapery at waist. SUMPTUARY LAWS regulated the size of these hats. Princesses could wear hats a yard high; however, those of noble ladies could be only 24" or less. Also called *steeple headdress* and *corner*. *Der.*: From an old French word meaning "to inconvenience,"



hennin, 2nd half of the 15th c.

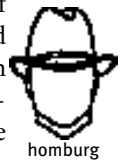
a reference to the inconvenience such a headdress would cause.

heuke (hyuke) Veil enveloping wearer to knees or ankles—sometimes with the top stiffened by wire—worn over head forming a cage. Worn in Flanders in 16th and 17th c. Also spelled *hewke*, *heyke*, *hewk*.

high hat See HEADWEAR: TOP HAT.

hive bonnet See HEADWEAR: BEEHIVE HAT #1.

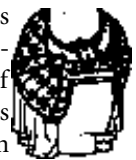
homburg Man's hat of rather stiff felt with narrow rolled brim and lengthwise crease in the crown worn from 1870s on for formal occasions. Made fashionable by Prince of Wales, later Edward VII, who visited Bad Homburg in Germany many times. Revived after President Dwight Eisenhower wore one to his inauguration in 1952. *Der.* Homburg, Prussia.



homburg

hood **1.** Preliminary, shaped piece of FELT or straw from which the milliner works. Has a high rounded nondescript crown and an extra large floppy brim. **2.** Accessory worn on the head and sometimes the shoulders that is frequently attached to a jacket or coat. Differs from a hat in that it has no specific shape and usually covers the entire head, sometimes tying under the chin. Popular item for winter wear, it is made in all types of fabrics and fur. Although there are a great variety of styles, there are no specific names for these items. Worn from 11th c. on but replaced generally by caps in 1860s and 1870s, and for winter sportswear in the 1920s and 1930s. Very popular from late 1960s and after.

horned headdress Headdress consisting of two horns extending horizontally at either side of face or curved upward. A veil was draped over top and hung down the back. Worn from 1410 to 1420, and, rarely, to 1460.



horned headdress 15th c.

hundred pleater See HEADWEAR: CHEF'S HAT.

hunt cap Cap cut in six segments with small visor, elastic chin strap, and button on center top, sometimes of cloverleaf shape. Worn with riding habit, it is sometimes made with a

plastic shell covered with velvet or velveteen and a padded lining.

hunt derby Stiff protective DERBY (see under HEADWEAR) made with reinforced strong plastic shell covered with black felt worn with riding habit.

hunting cap Bright-orange visored cap, sometimes fluorescent, enabling hunter to be seen in the woods.

Jenny Lind cap Crocheted band crossing the crown of the head coming down over ears and around to the back, where it fastened. Sometimes made of scarlet and white wool. Worn as a woman's MORNING CAP in late 1840s and early 1850s. *Der.* Copied from style worn by Jenny Lind (1820–1887), famous coloratura soprano called the “Swedish Nightingale.”

Joan Woman's small, dose-fitting indoor cap shaped like baby's bonnet tied under chin with narrow frill of muslin or lace around face. Worn from 1755 to 1765. Also called *Quaker cap*.

jockey cap Visored cap with crown usually of bicolored sateen cut in gores, similar to BASEBALL CAP (see under HEADWEAR) but with deeper crown, worn by racetrack jockeys. Similar caps worn by women in mid-1960s.

Juliet cap SKULLCAP (see under HEADWEAR) of rich fabric worn for evening or with wedding veils. May also be made entirely of pearls, jewels, or chain. *Der.* Medieval costume of Juliet in Shakespeare's play *Romeo and Juliet*.

kepi High-crowned, flattopped visored cap frequently worn with HAVELOCK (see under HEADWEAR) in back as protection from sun. Worn by French Foreign Legion and French General and statesman Charles de Gaulle. Also called *Legionnaire's cap*.

kerchief **1.** In current usage, a large triangle of cloth, or square folded in triangular fashion, worn as a headcovering or around the neck. Also see SCARVES: KERCHIEF and NECKERCHIEF. **2.** Covering for the head from Medieval times to end of 16th c. Also spelled *karcher*, *kercher*, *kercheve*, *kersche*. In 16th and 17th c., called a HEAD RAIL. See HEADWEAR: COVERCHIEF.

kevenhuller hat See HEADWEAR: COCKED HAT.

kiss-me-quick Popular name for tiny bonnet fashionable in late 1860s.

lamalle bonnet (lam-bahl') Saucer-shaped straw bonnet of mid-1860s worn flat on head with sides pulled down slightly and tied under chin with large ribbon bow. Some had lace LAPPETS (see under HEADWEAR), others had small veils in back called “curtains.”

Langtry hood Detachable hood on woman's outdoor garment of 1880s with a colored lining. *Der.* Named after actress *Lillie Langtry*.

lappets Long, ribbonlike strips of fabric that extend from a headdress. Particularly used in the 18th and 19th cs. to refer to such strips, often lace trimmed, when they hang at sides or back of an indoor cap.

leghorn hat/leghorn bonnet Woman's hat or bonnet in leghorn straw, a fine, smooth straw braid plaited with thirteen strands. Made from the upper part of wheat stalks grown near Livorno, a town in Tuscany, Italy. Fashionable at intervals since latter half of 19th c. *Der.* Named for place of export for the straw, Livorno, Italy. The British anglicized the name of the city to “Leghorn.”

Legionnaire's cap See HEADWEAR: KEPÍ.

lettice cap/bonnet **1.** 16th-c. term for woman's outdoor cap or bonnet of triangular shape that covered the ears. Made of lettice, a fur resembling ermine. **2.** In 16th and 17th c., man's nightcap of lettice fur worn to induce sleep. Also called *ermine cap* or *miniver cap*.

liberty cap **1.** See FRENCH REVOLUTION STYLES. **2.** See HEADWEAR: BONNET ROUGE. **3.** See HEADWEAR: PHRYGIAN CAP.

liripipe **1.** Long pendant tail of the CHAPERONE (see under HEADWEAR), a hood worn in 14th and 15th c. **2.** Part of a hood worn by university graduates from 1350 to 15th c. Also spelled *liripipium*, *lirapipe*, *liripoop*. Also called *tippet*.

long hood See HEADWEAR: PUG HOOD.

Louis XV hat Woman's hat of mid-1870s with large high crown and wide brim turned up on one side. Fastened to crown with velvet bows and trimmed elaborately with ostrich feathers. *Der.* Named for Louis XV of France (1710–1774).

lounging cap Gentleman's at-home cap, worn in mid-1860s, made in pillbox or dome shape with silk tassels fastened at center. Also called *Greek lounging cap*.

lunardi See HEADWEAR: BALLOON HAT.

mafors Long narrow veil worn by women from 6th to 11th c. that usually covered head and draped over shoulders.

Mameluke turban (mama-luke') White satin woman's turban of 1804 trimmed with one large ostrich feather, with the front rolled back like a hat brim over a dome-shaped crown. *Der.* Mamelukes were originally non-Arab slaves brought to Egypt, later trained as soldiers. Ruled Egypt from 1250 to 1517 and remained powerful until 1811 under Turkish viceroys. The Mameluke army was defeated by Napoleon Bonaparte during his Egyptian campaign in 1798.

Mandarin hat Woman's black velvet PORK PIE HAT (see under HEADWEAR) of early 1860s with feather trim over the back of the flat crown. Design inspiration may have been an ancient Chinese court hat with wide, flaring, upturned brim and decorative button at crown (indicating rank of wearer), made of fur and satin for winter and decorated with a peacock feather.

mantilla (man-til'-ah) Large oblong, fine lace veil, usually in rose pattern of black or white, worn wrapped over head and crossed under chin with one end thrown over shoulder. Frequently worn to church instead of a hat in Spain and South America. Popular after it was worn in early 1960s by U.S. first lady Jacqueline Kennedy.

Marie Stuart bonnet/cap Bonnet with heart-shaped peak or brim projecting over center of forehead, popular from 1820 to 1870, especially for widows. A derivative of the ATTIFET headdress (see under HEADWEAR) worn by Mary, Queen of Scots, also called Mary Stuart (or Stewart) (1542–1587).

Marie Stuart hood Separate hood of 1860s with heart-shaped peaked brim in front extended over the face with crown cut round and gathered at edge. Tied with ribbons under chin and lavishly trimmed with RUCHING, embroidery, braid, and ribbon.

marin anglais bonnet (mar'-ahn an-glayz') Woman's bonnet worn on the back of the head like a child's sailor hat in 1870s. Trimmed with ribbon and feathers and tied under chin. *Der.* French, "English sailor cap."

marmotte bonnet (mar'-mowt) Tiny bonnet of early 1830s with narrow front brim similar to BIBI BONNET. See under HEADWEAR.

marmotte cap (mar'-mowt) Triangular handkerchief, placed on back of head and tied under chin, worn indoors by women in early 1830s.

marquis (mar-kwiss' or mar-kee') A three-cornered hat worn by women.

Mary, Queen of Scots cap Indoor cap worn by women, mainly matrons and widows, from 1750s to 1760s. Made with a heart-shaped peak in center front edged with beads, may have side frills and lappets. Also called *Mary cap*.

matador hat (mat-ah-door) Hat shaped like the top of a bull's head—rounded over forehead with two projections like bull's horns covered with black tufts of fabric, with the center of crown of embroidered velvet. Worn by bullfighters in Spain and Mexico.

mazarin hood (maz'-ah-rhan) Woman's hood worn in the last quarter of the 17th c. *Der.* Named after the Duchesse de Mazarin, niece of Cardinal Mazarin (1602–1661), minister to Louis XIV.

Mecklenburg cap Turban-style indoor cap worn by women in 1760s. *Der.* Named after Charlotte of Mecklenburg, who married George III of England in 1761.

mentonnières (mahn-tæ nyehr') See HEADWEAR: CHIN STAYS.

Merry Widow hat Very wide-brimmed hat, sometimes a yard across, frequently of velvet and ornately trimmed with ostrich plumes. *Der.* Named for 1905 light opera *The Merry Widow*, with music by Franz Lehár.

Milan bonnet (mee-lan') Man's cap of first half of 16th c., usually black with soft puffed crown. Rolled-up brim was sometimes slit on the sides and trimmed with crimson satin lining pulled through slashes.

milkmaid hat See HEADWEAR: BERGÈRE.

miner's cap Stiff cap with short duck-billed visor and battery-powered light attached to front of crown.

mistake hat Woman's hat with tall flat-topped crown and brim cut in blunt point in front and turned up. Back brim was turned down. Worn on the back of the head in 1804.

miter **1.** Woman's headband worn in ancient Greece. **2.** See HEADWEAR: HEART-SHAPED HEADDRESS.

Moabi teturban (mo'-ab-ite) Woman's crepe turban draped in many folds and trimmed with an aigrette feather on one side. Worn tilted to back of head in early 1830s.

mob cap Woman's indoor cap of 18th and 19th cs. made of white cambric or muslin with gathered crown and ruffled edge forming a bonnet. Had side LAPPETS (see under HEADWEAR), called *kissing strings* or *bridles*, which tied under the chin.



mod cap Cap similar to NEWSBOY CAP (see under HEADWEAR), popular in the United States in the mid-1960s.

molded felt Hat industry term for the felt HOOD made into hat shape by placing over a wooden block shaped like a head. See HEADWEAR: HOOD #1.

Monmouth cap Man's knitted cap with high rounded crown and small turned-down brim worn by soldiers, sailors, and civilians. Listed as necessary item for new settlers in America. Most common in 17th c. although also worn from 1570s to 1625. Made at Monmouth and Bewdley in Worcestershire, England. Also called *Bewdley cap* and worn by country folk by that name as late as 19th c.

Monmouth cock See HEADWEAR: COCKED HAT.

Montespan hat (mon-tes-pan') Woman's small round velvet evening hat of 1843 with brim turned up in front, trimmed with plume. *Der.* Named for Marquise de Montespan (1641–1707), mistress of Louis XIV of France.

Montgomery beret Military cap, a bit larger than the conventional BASQUE BERET (see HEADWEAR: BERET) but set on a band like a Scottish *tam-o-shanter* and decorated with reg-

imental insignia. Popular after being adopted by field marshal Bernard Law Montgomery, 1st Viscount Montgomery, commander of British ground forces in World War II.

mont-la-haut See HEADWEAR: COMMODE.

morning cap Dainty cap of muslin, lace, tulle, and ribbon worn on the back of the head indoors in the morning by women from 1820s to end of 19th c. Also called a *breakfast cap*.

mortarboard See ACADEMIC COSTUME.

motorcycle helmet Molded plastic helmet with foam lining worn when riding a motorcycle. Usually has a large dark-colored plastic shield that snaps on to protect eyes and face.

motoring veil See HEADWEAR: AUTOMOBILE VEIL.

Mountie's hat Wide-brimmed hat with high crown creased into four sections with a small peak at the top. Similar to World War I army hat worn with dress uniform. Worn by state policemen, Forest Rangers, and by the Royal Canadian Mounted Police.

mourning bonnet Any black bonnet worn to complete a mourning costume—especially in the 1870s and 1880s. An off-the-face bonnet, sometimes with a heart-shaped brim, it was made of black silk, lavishly trimmed with RUCHING and ribbon, and tied under the chin. The veil was arranged over the face or allowed to hang down the back.

mourning veil Semi-sheer black veil to the shoulders, usually circular, sometimes edged with wide band of black fabric worn under or over hat at funerals or during periods of mourning.

mousquetaire hat (moose-ke-tare') **1.** Wide-brimmed hat usually trimmed with three ostrich plumes. Also called *Swedish hat*. *Der.* From hats worn by French musketeers or royal bodyguards of Louis XIII in 17th c. **2.** Brown mushroom-shaped woman's straw hat edged with black lace hanging from the brim worn in late 1850s.

muffin hat Man's fabric hat with round flat crown and narrow standing brim used for country wear in 1860s.

Muller cut-down Man's hat of 1870s made like top hat with crown cut to half the height. *Der.* Named after English murderer whose hat led to his arrest in 1864.

mushroom hat Woman's straw hat with small round crown and downward-curved brim, shaped like the cap of a mushroom. Worn in 1870s and 1880s, trimmed with ribbons, flowers, and birds. Worn again in early 1900s and in the 1930s and 1940s usually made of felt.

napkin-cap Man's 18th-c. house cap or plain NIGHTCAP (see HEADWEAR: NIGHTCAP #2) worn at home when wig was removed.

Neapolitan bonnet (nee-a-poll-i-tan) LEGHORN bonnet of 1800 (see under HEADWEAR) trimmed with straw flowers and matching ribbons attached at the crown and loosely tied over the chest. *Der.* Greek, *Napolis*, "old town," present-day Naples.

Neapolitan hat (nee-a-poll'-i-tan) Sheer lacy conical hat made in Naples of horseshair braid. Later, any hat made of this braid. *Der.* City in which it originates: Naples.

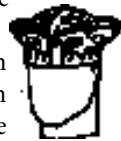
Nebula headdress See HEADWEAR: GOFFERED HEADDRESS.

necked bonnet Lined or unlined cap with wide flap fitted around back of neck worn by men in first half of 16th c.

newsboy cap Soft fabric cap with flat bloused crown and visor that sometimes snaps to the crown. Formerly worn by news boys and made famous by child actor Jackie Coogan in silent films of the 1920s. Revived in exaggerated form in 1960s and 1970s. Also popular in 2000 and after. May be referred to by various names (e.g., Carnaby, bebop, soul, applejack cap).

night coif (kwaf) Woman's cap worn with NEGLIGEE costume or in bed in 16th and 17th c. Frequently embroidered and usually worn with FOREHEAD CLOTH (see HEADWEAR: CROSSCLOTH #2).

nightcap 1. Plain washable cap worn in bed by men and women from earliest times, sometimes made like stocking cap of knitted silk with tassel on top. In 19th c. called a



man's
nightcap
18th c.

jellybag. Also see HEADWEAR: BIGGIN #2. 2. 14th- to mid-19th-c. skullcap with upturned brim, worn indoors by men when wig was removed. 3. See HEADWEAR: NAPKIN CAP. 4. See HEADWEAR: MOB CAP.

Norwegian morning cap/Norwegian morning bonnet Woman's cerise and white-striped Shetland wool, knitted kerchief-shaped head covering of 1860s. Tied under the chin with a ribbon and trimmed with bows over crown and back of the head.

nurse's cap White stiffly starched fabric cap received by nurses at graduation. At one time, but no longer, worn pinned to the crown of the head when dressed in uniform and on duty in hospitals. Each school of nursing has an individual style of cap.

obi hat Woman's hat of 1804 with high flat-topped crown and narrow brim rolled up in front. Ribbons come over crown and brim of hat, tying under chin.

octagonal hat Cap shaped like a TAM (see HEADWEAR) made of six wedges stitched together, forming an octagonal-shaped crown. Sometimes made of two contrasting fabrics and usually trimmed with two short streamers hanging in back. Popular for girls and young women in mid-1890s.

open-crown hat Woman's hat made without a crown—may be of the HALO or TOQUE hat type (see under HEADWEAR).

opera hat 1. Small tricorne hat carried under the arm rather than worn from mid-18th c. on. Also called *chapeau bras*. 2. Bicorné hat worn from 1800 to 1830 with a crescent-shaped brim front and back that could be compressed and carried under the arm. Also called a *military folding hat*. 3. Man's tall silk hat with collapsible crown worn formerly for full dress occasions. Also worn by ringmasters, magicians, and performers. Differs from a TOP HAT (see under HEADWEAR) by being completely collapsible and made of dull, rather than shiny, fabric. Also called a **gibus** (jy-bus) and made with sides containing metal springs that snapped open to hold it upright. *Der.* From Antoine Gibus, who invented the hat in 1823, patented in 1837. Similar styles

were called *chapeau claque*, *circumfolding hat*, and *elastic round hat*.

oralia (or-ahl'-yuh) Early medieval term for pointed veil. By first quarter of 14th c., known as *cornalia* or *cornu*. Also spelled *orales*. *Der.* Latin, "veil."

orilet (or-let') Term used in later half of 16th c. for hanging side pieces of woman's coif that covered ears. Also called *cheeks-and-ears*. Also spelled *oreillett*, *orillette*, *orilyet*. See HEADWEAR: COIF #3.

overseas cap Flat folding cloth cap of khaki or olive drab fabric worn by men and women in the armed services. Has a lengthwise pleat from front to back in center of crown to enable it to fold flat. Worn overseas in World Wars I and II. Also called *garrison cap*.

Paco Rabanne hat (pak'-oh rah'-bahn) Unusual cap fitted to conform to the head and covered with tiny diamond-shaped mirrors linked together. Introduced in late 1960s and named for French couturier *Paco Rabanne*.

padre hat Shovel-shaped hat with turned-up brim on the sides and long square cut brim in front and back. Worn by some orders of Catholic priests. *Der.* Italian, "father."

painter's cap Lightweight duck-billed fabric cap made with a round, flat-topped crown. Sometimes imprinted with school name, team name, or resort on front of crown. *Der.* From cap worn by house painters.

palisade See HEADWEAR: COMMODE.

pamela **1.** Straw bonnet worn from 1845 to late 1860s, made of a "saucer-shaped" piece of straw or fabric placed on top of the head. Fastened with bonnet strings that bent it into a U-shape around the face. Trimmed on top with foliage, flowers, or feathers. **2.** Continued to be a basic hat style with a rounded crown and wide brim and now often called a **halo hat**.



pamela or halo hat

Panama hat **1.** Hat made of fine, expensive straw obtained from the leaves of the *jipijapa* plant handwoven in Ecuador. Very popular at the end of 19th and beginning



panama hat

of 20th c. Worn in different styles from 1855 on. A large Panama hat was worn by the Prince of Wales in 1920s at Belmont Park, Long Island, where more than 50,000 people were gathered, thus reviving the wearing of Panama hat. **2.** By extension, any man's straw summer hat regardless of type of straw.

pancake beret See HEADWEAR: BERET #2.

pantile See HEADWEAR: COPOTAIN.

papillion See HEADWEAR: BONNET À BEC.

parachute hat See BALLOON HAT.

Peruvian hat Woman's rain hat made from plaited palm leaves, worn in early 19th c.

petasos (pet'-ah-soss) **1.** Felt hat with a large floppy brim and nondescript crown worn in ancient Greece when traveling. Also worn in ancient Rome. **2.** Close-fitting winged cap as seen in representations of Roman god, Mercury. Also spelled *petasus*.

Peter Pan hat Small hat with brim extended in front and turned up in back. Made with a conical crown trimmed with long feathers. *Der.* Named after the hat worn by actress Maude Adams in 1905 when starring in J. M. Barrie's play *Peter Pan*.

Phrygian cap/Phrygian bonnet (frij'-ee-an)

1. Cap with high rounded peak curving forward with lappets hanging at sides, sometimes made of leather. Worn in ancient Greece from 9th to 12th c. and copied from 18th c. on as BONNET ROUGE (see under HEADWEAR). **2.** See PILEUS #2.

pickelhaube See HEADWEAR: GERMAN HELMET.

picture hat Hat with large brim framing the face, frequently made of straw. Also see HEADWEAR: LEGHORN HAT.

pileus (pi'-lay-uss) /**pilleus** **1.** Ancient Roman skullcap worn at games and festivals. **2.** Felt brimless cap with peak folded over, similar to PHRYGIAN CAP (see under HEADWEAR), worn by freed Roman slaves. Also see PILOS. *Der.* Latin, "skullcap."



pillbox hat Classic round brimless hat that can be worn forward or on the back of the head. Introduced in late 1920s

pillbox hat

and worn since with slight variations. *Der.* From small round pillboxes formerly used by chemists or druggists.

pilos (pi'-los) Conical cap worn by Greek peasants or fishermen, derived from those worn by ancient Greeks and Romans, similar to PILEUS (see under HEADWEAR). *Der.* Latin, "skullcap."

pinner A lappet, a strip of fabric hanging from a woman's indoor cap, when worn pinned up and, by extension, term for cap itself in 17th to mid-18th c.

pipkin Woman's small hat, worn about 1565 to 1600, made with flat crown pleated into narrow brim. Usually trimmed with a narrow jeweled band and feathers. Also called *taffeta pipkin*.

pith helmet See TOPEE.

planter's hat Wide-brimmed white or natural handwoven straw hat with high dented crown, banded with dark ribbon. Worn by Southern gentlemen in the United States and popular for women in late 1960s.

plug hat See HEADWEAR: TOP HAT.

poke bonnet Bonnet of 19th c. made with very wide brim slanting forward from small crown to frame and shadow the face. Also called *poking bonnet*. When made with rolled brim—one side extending beyond the cheek, the other side rolled back from face, it was called a **conversation bonnet**, a style worn in 1803.

Polish toque Woman's hat of mid-1860s somewhat similar to *pillbox*, trimmed in front with foliage and in back with a large bunch of velvet ribbon loops.

polka Woman's cap of cream-colored tulle with crocheted edges appliquéd with lace floral designs, with LA PPEETS (see under HEADWEAR) covering ears, and tied under chin.

polo hat See HEADWEAR: CHUKKA HAT.

pork-pie hat 1. Classic snap-brim man's hat, flat on top with crease around edge of crown, made of fabric, straw or felt. Worn in 1930s and copied for women in the 1940s. Still a basic hat for men.



pork pie hat #1

2. Introduced in 1860s as a hat for women made of straw or velvet

with a low flat crown and turned-up narrow brim.

postboy hat Woman's small straw hat of 1885 styled with high flat crown and narrow brim sloping down all around. Trimmed with plume in front and worn perched on top of head.

postillion (pohse-til'-yohn) Hat with tall tapered crown and narrow brim, usually beaver, worn by women for riding. *Der.* From clothes worn by *postillions*, "men on horseback accompanying carriages."

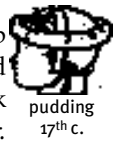
pot hat See HEADWEAR: TOP HAT.

prayer veil Small triangular lace veil worn instead of hat for church services.

profile hat Woman's hat with brim turned down sharply on one side, silhouetting the profile, popular in late 1930s.

Pucci hat (pooch'-ee) Plastic glass bubble with cut-out for the face that stands away from the head to keep hair from blowing. Designed by Emilio Pucci, Italian couturier, as part of wardrobe for airline stewardesses.

pudding Small, round padded cap or padded band worn by infants and small children to serve as shock absorber in a fall. *Synonym:* *bumper*.



pudding 17th c.

pug hood Woman's soft hood of 18th c. with pleats radiating from back where it fitted the head. Made with or without an attached cape. Usually black with colored turned-back lining and tied under the chin with matching ribbons. Same as *short hood*. A **long hood** was similar, but with long tabs on the sides to facilitate tying under the chin.

pultney cap Woman's heart-shaped indoor cap of 1760s with wired peak, worn on the back of the head.

Puritan hat Black, stiff, tall-crowned man's hat with medium-wide straight brim trimmed with wide black band and silver buckle in center front. Worn by Puritan men in America in early 17th c. and copied for women in 1970s.

Quaker bonnet Small close-fitting, undecorated woman's bonnet with a puffed crown and stiff brim tied under the chin. Made in same fabric as the dress (often gray) or in straw, and worn over a ruffled white muslin

cap. In 17th through 19th c. prescribed for women of Quaker faith by the Society of Friends.

Quaker cap See HEADWEAR: JOAN CAP.

Quaker hat **1.** TRICORNE HAT with open cock and tall crown, worn in 18th c. **2.** Hat with large, slightly rolled brim, low crown, and no ornamentation worn in the 19th c. by Quaker men.

quartered cap Boy's cap with flat circular crown divided into four segments and attached to stiff band. Made with or without a visor from mid-18th to mid-19th c.

rain bonnet Accordion-pleated plastic covering for head that ties under chin. Folds up to fit in purse when not in use.

rain hat Any waterproof hat worn in the rain. Some hats are made of vinyl and styled with a high crown and a floppy brim. Also see HEADWEAR: SOU'WESTER.

ranelagh mob Woman's cap of 1760s made with a KERCHIEF (see under HEADWEAR) folded diagonally and placed over the head with two long ends tied under chin. The ends were pulled back and pinned or left to hang down.

ranger's hat See HEADWEAR: MOUNTIE'S HAT.

Red Baron helmet See HEADWEAR: AVIATOR'S HELMET.

red crown Outward flaring crown with long extension up back worn by kings of Upper Egypt in ancient times. When kingdom became united both the *red crown* and the WHITE CROWN (see under HEADWEAR) were worn together.

reticulation (re-ti'-cu-lay-shun) Decorative netting holding hair on either side of face worn with horned headdress by women in 15th c. See HEADWEAR: CAUL #1.

Rex Harrison hat Man's snap-brim hat of wool tweed with narrow brim and matching tweed band. Popular after being worn by actor Rex Harrison in his role as Professor Henry Higgins in the musical *My Fair Lady*, in 1956.

Robin Hood hat Hat with high peaked crown, brim turned up in back, down in front, and trimmed with one long feather. *Der.* From hat in illustrations of books about Robin Hood, legendary British outlaw of the 12th c.

roll 15th-c. term for the circular pad made when converting the man's chaperon into a hat. Also see HEADWEAR: BOURRELET.

roller Hat with close-fitting crown and narrow curved brim worn rolled up or with the front turned down. Popular for women and girls in 1930s and 1940s, revived in early 1970s.

round-eared cap Woman's white cambric or lace indoor cap worn from 1730s to 1760s. It curved around face and was finished with a ruffle. The shallow back was pulled together with a drawstring. Sometimes with side LAPPETS (see under HEADWEAR) pinned up or tied loosely under chin. Sometimes called *coif*.

roundlet **1.** 17th-c. term used to describe the roll of the 15th-c. CHAPERONE, worn with a stuffed roll encircling the head and tail, called a *becca*, which was a long strip of fabric hanging forward that was sometimes worn slung over the shoulders. This style was very popular in the reign of Henry VI of England and was also called a *berretino*. **2.** Man's small round hat of the 18th c. with attached streamer for carrying it over shoulder.

Rubens hat High-crowned woman's hat of 1870s and 1880s with brim turned up on one side, sometimes trimmed with feathers and bows. *Der.* Named for hats painted by Flemish master Peter Paul Rubens (1577–1640).

safari hat Lightweight straw or fabric hat shaped somewhat like a shallow soup dish with medium-sized brim. Hat is somewhat similar to a TOPEE (see under HEADWEAR) with a shallower crown. Worn to deflect heat in warm weather. *Der.* Shape of hat is similar to those worn on African hunting trips called "safaris."

sailor hat **1.** Hat worn by naval enlisted personnel made of white duck fabric with gored crown and stitched up-turned brim worn either on the back of the head or tilted over the forehead. Also called *gob hat* and *tennis hat*. **2.** Women's straight brimmed hat with shallow flat crown worn since 1860s. Very popular in 1890s for sportswear and bicycling and worn intermittently since. **3.** Popular hat for small boys in the 1880s, sometimes em-



sailor hat #1

broidered with fictitious name of a ship on a ribbon band at the base of the crown, similar in style to the brimless FRENCH SAILOR HAT (see under HEADWEAR).

Saint Laurent hat Cap designed by French couturier Yves Saint Laurent in 1966, made of leather studded with nailheads and styled similar to World War I aviator's helmet.

Salvation Army bonnet High-crowned black straw bonnet with short front brim raised off forehead to show a pale-blue lining. Has dark-blue ribbon around crown and ties under chin; worn by women of the Salvation Army, a religious and charitable organization.

scarf cap Long tubular knitted or crocheted scarf with opening for head in one end, similar to STOCKING CAP (see under HEADWEAR).

scarf hat **1.** Woman's soft fabric hat made by tying a scarf over a lining or base, sometimes shaped like a PILLBOX (see under HEADWEAR), and sewed in place. **2.** A triangular piece of colorful print or plain fabric quilted on long side. Worn with quilted part in center front and tied on the head like a KERCHIEF (see under HEADWEAR).

scoop bonnet Bonnet popular in 1840s with wide stiff brim shaped like a flour scoop attached to soft crown. *Der.* From old-fashioned "flour scoop."

scottie A brimless hat styled somewhat like the GLENGARRY (see under HEADWEAR) with narrow recessed crown. Veiling, ribbon, or feathers are sometimes placed on top toward the back.

sempstress bonnet Woman's bonnet of 1812 with long, wide ribbons crossing under chin and brought up to top of crown, where they tied in a bow.

service cap Army cap worn with dress uniform, made with a stiff, round, flat top and stiff visor of leather or plastic.

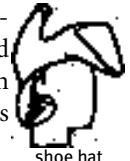
shade Piece of knitted or woven fabric usually attached to a hatband and arranged to fall over the back of the head and neck to prevent sunburn. Worn by women in 1880s.

shako (shay'-ko) Cylindrical stiff tall cap with attached visor. Top is sometimes tapered, sometimes flared, with feather cockade in

front. Worn by marching bands, it was adapted from a style of military cap worn formerly. Also see HEADWEAR: DRUM MAJOR'S HAT.

shepherdess hat See HEADWEAR: BERGÈRE.

shoe hat Hat designed by Elsa Schiaparelli in the 1930s that looked like a woman's shoe. This design was reflective of the designer's interest in SURREALISM.



shoe hat
1930s

shower cap Plastic or waterproof cap, usually shirred into an elastic band, worn to keep the hair dry when taking a shower.

silk hat High cylindrical-shaped hat with flat top and silk-plush finish used by men on formal occasions and with formal riding dress by men and women. Invented by John Hetherington, a haberdasher of London, provoking a riot when first worn by him on January 15, 1797. He was charged in court for "breach of peace" for frightening timid people. Hat subsequently became the TOP HAT (see under HEADWEAR) in 1830.

skimmer SAILOR HAT OR BOATER (see under HEADWEAR), with exaggerated shallow crown and wide brim.

skullcap Gored cap, usually made in eight sections, which fits tightly to crown of the head, often part of ecclesiastical garb or national costume. A **beanie** is a skullcap cut in gores to fit the head. Worn by children and by freshmen students as a part of hazing by upperclassmen, this is also called a *dink* or *dinky*. A **yarmulka** (yahr-muhl'-kuh) is a skullcap made of plain, embroidered, beaded, or crocheted fabric that is worn by Orthodox Jewish males for day wear and in the synagogue. Worn by other Jewish men for special occasions and religious services. Also see HEADWEAR: CALOTTE and CLERICAL DRESS: CALOTTE.

sleep bonnet Any net, snood, or cap worn to bed to protect hairstyle.

slouch hat Woman's hat similar to a man's FEDORA (see under HEADWEAR) made with a flexible brim that may be turned down in front. Also called a GARBO HAT (see under HEADWEAR).



slouch hat

snap-brim hat Man's or woman's hat with the brim worn at several different angles according to the preference of the wearer. Also see HEADWEAR: REX HARRISON HAT.

snood Hairnet made from chenille, mesh, or other material worn at the back of the head and nape of neck to confine the hair—sometimes attached to a hat. In 15th and 16th c., nets decorated with pearls and jewels were worn. During the Second Empire (1852–1870) snoods of chenille or fine silk cord decorated with steel beads were worn over the CHIGNON (see under HAIRSTYLES). A **cadogan net** was a snood, popular in late 1870s and early 1880s particularly for young women and girls, that was sometimes made of knotted silk yarn, worn over crown of head and enclosing the hair that hangs down the back. Also spelled *catagan*. Snoods are revived periodically.



sombrero (som-brer'-oh) Mexican hat with a tall, slightly tapered crown and large upturned brim. Worn in Mexico by peons in straw and by wealthier citizens in felt lavishly trimmed around the edge, sometimes with silver lace. Also worn in Spain and the southwestern United States, where it is made of felt and somewhat similar to a *ten-gallon hat*. *Der.* Spanish, *sombre*, "to shade."

sombrero córdobés See HEADWEAR: GAUCHO HAT.

soul cap See HEADWEAR: NEWSBOY CAP.

sou'wester/southwester Rain hat made with a dome-shaped sectioned crown and broad stitched brim—larger in back. Originally made of yellow oiled silk—now made of any waterproof fabric for children's rainwear and fishermen. *Der.* First worn by fishermen in New England where a wind from the southwest meant rain.

space helmet Helmet made of molded plastic covering the head and neck completely and fastening to collar around the top of the space suit. Front section is made of see-through plastic with mirror-like reflective finish.

splyter-hat 16th-c. term for hat made of braided split pieces of straw rather than whole rounded stalks. Also spelled *splinter*.

spoon bonnet Small-crowned bonnet of early 1860s with brim narrow at sides and projecting upward above forehead in elliptical shape.

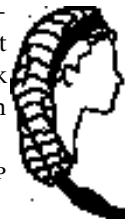
Statue of Liberty visor Headband with seven spikes and visor in front worn during "Liberty Weekend" in 1986 in celebration of the renovation of the Statue of Liberty in New York harbor.

steeple headdress See HEADWEAR: HENNIN.

stephane 1. Decorated crescent-shaped headdress worn in ancient Greece and Rome by brides, or as a badge of office or wreath used as a symbol of victory. 2. Ancient Greek term for anything that encircles the head; a *coronal*, *diadem*, or the brim of a helmet. 3. Crown sent by Byzantine Emperors to other monarchs and important dignitaries. Also spelled *stephanos*.

Stetson® Trade name for a man's hat manufacturer of all types of hats, but often used to mean a wide-brimmed Western-style hat, especially the cowboy style (see under HEADWEAR).

stocking cap A knitted or crocheted cap with a long pendant tail worn hanging down the back or side frequently with a tassel on the end. Also called *toboggan cap*.



stovepipe hat See HEADWEAR: TOP HAT.

st roller Casual mannish felt hats stocking cap worn by women for town and spectator sports in 1930s and 1940s.

sugarloaf hat See HEADWEAR: CAPOTAIN.

sun bonnet Wide-brimmed fabric bonnet tied under chin especially worn by infants and children for protection against the sun. Often made with pockets into which pieces of cardboard or other firm material could be slipped in order to provide stiffness to the brim. Worn originally by early pioneers on western treks across the United States for protection against the sun. Revived for Centennial celebrations throughout the United States.

swagger hat Informal sports hat, often felt, with medium-sized brim turned down in front. Popular in 1930s and 1940s for men and women.

sweatband 1. Band, usually made of sheepskin leather, placed around the inside of a man's hat where crown joins the brim, to protect hat from sweat. 2. A stretch terycloth band worn around the head during exercise to absorb sweat.

tam/tam-o-shanter 1. "Tam" is a shortened form of the Scottish "tam-o-shanter" used in the United States. It is a flat cap made in several ways: (a) out of two circles of fabric—one complete and one with hole cut in center—sewed together at the outer edge; (b) crocheted with pom pon on top for trim; (c) made out of piece of circular molded felt and also called a BERET (see under HEADWEAR). 2. Genuine Scottish tams are frequently made out of long, shaggy striped wool fabric and cut in segments so that stripes form a pattern on the top. Usually larger than other tams with a pom pon at center of crown. *Der.* From the name of the main character of Scottish poem written by Robert Burns about 1791 called "Tam O'Shanter."



tam

tea-cozy cap Cap introduced in late 1960s that fits head closely to cover hair completely. *Der.* Quilted padded cover for teapots used to keep the tea hot at the table.

templers/temples/templettes See HEADWEAR: BOSSES.

ten-gallon hat See HEADWEAR: COWBOY HAT and SOMBRERO.

terai hat Riding hat of fur or felt with red lining, shaped somewhat like a DERBY (see under HEADWEAR), with large brim that had a metal vent in the crown. Made with two hats sewed together at edges of brims and worn by British women, sometimes men, in tropical climates since 1880s.

Thérèse/Teresa (ter-eece') Large hood, held out with wire, designed to go over tall bonnets and hairstyles. Worn in France from mid-1770s to 1790, later with an attached shoulder cape.

three-storays-and-a-basement Amusing name given to woman's hat of 1886 with very high crown.

thrum 1. Short tufts of wool left on loom after fabric is cut away, which was knitted into workmen's caps in the United States, and England in 18th c. 2. Long-napped felt hat worn in 16th c. Also called a *thrummed hat*.

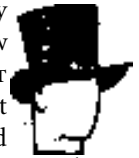
tiara (tee-ar'-ah) Curved band, often of metal set with jewels or flowers, worn on top of woman's head from ear to ear, giving effect of a crown. Sometimes used to hold a wedding veil. Also called *demi-coronal*.

tilbury hat Man's small hat with high tapered flat-topped crown and narrow rounded brim worn in 1830s.

toboggan cap See HEADWEAR: STOCKING CAP.

topee/topi Tropical helmet shaped more like a hat with a wide brim, originally made of cork ½" thick. Worn particularly in the jungles as a protection from the sun. Does not fit close to the head, because constructed with an air space between head and helmet. Also called *pith helmet*. *Der.* Name refers to European cork.

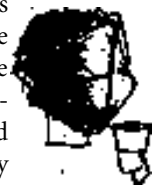
top hat Man's tall hat made of shiny silk or beaver cloth with narrow brim. Differs from an OPERA HAT (see under HEADWEAR) in that the latter is always collapsible and made of dull silk. Term used since about 1820 for a high crowned hat with a flat top and narrow brim, sometimes slightly rolled at the sides. Also called a *chimney-pot hat* from the 1830s, when it replaced the beaver hat. After this it was made by felting rabbit hair on top of silk and applying steam and pressure to make a smooth and shiny surface. Also see HEADWEAR: SILK HAT. Also called *plug hat* (American term for top hat), *pot hat*, *stovepipe hat* (because of its resemblance to a stove pipe), or *topper*.



top hat

topper See HEADWEAR: TOP HAT.

toque (tok) 1. A basic hat type that has a high crown and is generally brimless or may have a very small brim. Can be made in various shapes, often turban-like. 2. Woman's coif or head scarf worn in the 16th and early 17th cs.



toque #1

toquet (toe-ket') Woman's small draped evening hat worn on back of head in 1840s. Made of satin or velvet with small turned-up brim in front and trimmed with ostrich feather.

toreador hat (tor-ayah'-dor) **1.** See HEADWEAR: MATADOR HAT. **2.** Woman's hat of the 1890s with flat, shallow circular crown made of felt or straw and worn tilted. Inspired by the opera *Carmen*, starring Emma Calvé.

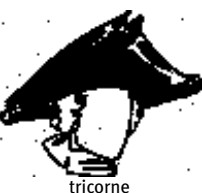
tosade (tor-sahd') Coronet of pleated velvet or tulle with long LAPPETS (see under HEADWEAR) worn for evening by women in 1864.

touring cap Leather or fabric cap with snap-down visor, frequently treated for water repellency. Popular in the 1980s, it is copied from earlier cap worn when "touring" in early 20th-c. automobiles.

Trafalgar turban British woman's evening turban of 1806 embroidered with Admiral Nelson's name. *Der.* Named for British naval victory near Cape Trafalgar, off Spanish coast, in 1805.

trencher hat Woman's silk hat with triangular brim coming to point above forehead, worn in first decade of the 19th c.

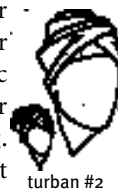
tricorne (try'-korn) 19th-c. term for variation of the cocked hat (see under HEADWEAR), turned up to form three equidistant peaks with one peak in center front. Also spelled *tricorn*.



trilby Man's soft felt hat with supple brim worn from 1895 on. *Der.* Inspired by George de Maurier's 1894 novel *Trilby*. The following year, *Trilby* was made into a play in which Beerbohm Tree played the character Svengali, in this type of hat.

trooper cap Man's or boy's cap of leather or leatherlike plastic with fur or pile lining and a flap around sides and back. Flaps can be folded down to keep ears warm or up to reveal lining. *Der.* Originally worn by state police or "troopers," now used by mail carriers, police officers, etc.

turban **1.** Man's headdress of Moslem origin consisting of long scarf of linen, cotton, or silk wound around the head. Sometimes with one loose end hanging down, or decorated with a jewel in center front. Sometimes consists of fabric wrapped around a FEZ (see under HEADWEAR) with crown showing. **2.** Adaptation of this draped hat for women has become a classic style.



Turkey bonnet Term used in the 15th and 16th-c. for man's or woman's tall cylindrical hat without a brim introduced to Italy, France, and England from the East. Woman's style was shaped like inverted flower pot with veil from crown passing under chin. Also called *Turkey hat*.

tutulus (toot-too'-luss) Tall cone-shaped hat worn by ancient Etruscan women with, or without, upturned brim across the front.

Tyrolean hat See HEADWEAR: ALPINE HAT.

ugly British term for collapsible brim worn from late 1840s to mid-1860s over a *bonnet* as a sunshade to protect weak eyes or when traveling. Made of series of cane half-hoops covered with silk. When not in use, folded up like a *calash*.

umbrella brim Brim of woman's hat set in *umbrella pleats*, opens out to resemble an umbrella.

under cap **1.** Indoor cap made like a skull-cap worn under hat by elderly men in 16th c. **2.** Woman's indoor cap usually shaped like a COIF (#3) worn under outdoor hat from 16th to mid-19th c.

Valois hat (val-wa') Velvet or beaver hat with brim of equal width all around worn by women in 1822.

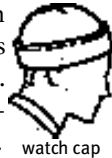
veil **1.** Decorative accessory usually made of lace, net, tulle, or sheer fabric placed on the head and usually draped down the back. May also drape over the face and shoulders. **2.** Piece of net or tulle attached to a hat. Introduced in medieval times and called a *coverchief*. From late 18th to end of 19th c. a piece of net, lace, or gauze worn attached to an outdoor bonnet

or hat worn by women. Arranged to cover part or the entire face or draped to back as trimming. From 1890s veils extended to the chin. Worn intermittently since, mostly as trim. Particularly worn in 1930s, 1940s, and 1950s.

visor Stiffened part of a semicircle attached to a headband or to front of a cap to protect eyes from the sun. Also called **bill**.

vulture-winged headdress Egyptian queen's headdress with two wings hanging down on either side of the face with the uraeus, or cobra design of the sacred asp, usually attached to center front. The vulture wings are a symbol of protection used by the Egyptians.

watch cap Knitted cap, fitting closely over head with turned-up cuff, made of navy-blue wool yarn. Worn by sailors on watch, for other work duty, or as a replacement for white duck hat. Adapted in other colors for sportswear by men, women, and children.



Watteau hat (wat-toe') Small hat for the seashore shaped like an upside-down saucer, worn by women in 1866. Trimmed with ribbons radiating from crown to edge of brim. Sometimes had a rosette with attached streamers on right side. *Der.* Named for the artist WATTEAU.

welding cap Cap similar to a baseball cap but with a relatively short visor (see under HEADWEAR).

Wellington hat Tall beaver hat worn by men in the 1820s and 1830s with a crown at least 8" high and flared at the top. *Der.* Named for the first Duke of Wellington, British military hero who defeated Napoleon in the Battle of Waterloo in 1815.

western hat High-crowned hat with a flat top and wide brim frequently trimmed with a leather thong pulled through holes punched at regular intervals around the crown. Has a leather adjustable strap worn under the chin to secure the hat, or permit it to hang down the back. Similar to GAUCHO HAT (see under HEADWEAR).

white crown Crown of ancient upper Egypt made in tall cylindrical shape tapered in at top and ending with a knob. When Egypt became

united, this crown was worn together with the red crown of lower Egypt.

wide-awake Man's 19th c. broad-brimmed low-crowned hat of felt or other material used for country wear.

widow's peak Small cap wired in heart-shaped form with peak in center of forehead. Originally worn by Catherine de Medici as a widow's bonnet and much worn by Mary, Queen of Scots. Also see HEADWEAR: MARIE STUART BONNET.

wig hat Soft hat, often crocheted, that fits tightly around the face but blouses in the back. Some hats are entirely covered with feathers, some with flowers. No hair shows from beneath the hat. Popular in mid-1960s.

William Penn hat Medium-sized brim with high-rounded crown worn forward on the head. Introduced in late 1960s. *Der.* Similar to hat worn by William Penn (1644–1718) when he colonized Pennsylvania.

wimple 1. Cloth worn to cover the chin of a woman in the Middle Ages. During the 14th c., it gradually became a part of the customary dress of widows, who wore it with a dark hood and veil. It also became a part of the habits of some orders of nuns. Also called a *barbe*. 2. Gauze veil of 1809 worn with evening dress.

wind bonnet Lightweight foldup covering for head made of net, point d'esprit, or chiffon to protect hair.

World War I helmet Cast metal helmet, with a shallow crown and narrow brim, that did not cover the ears or conform to the shape of the head, held on by a chin strap.

World War II helmet Cast metal helmet conforming closely to the shape of the head with slightly upturned edge. When worn in battle, sometimes covered with a piece of multi-colored fabric for camouflage.

yachting cap Cap, usually white, with flat crown and black or navy blue visor, decorated with yacht-dub emblem. Styled similar to a naval officer's cap, and also worn by yacht-dub members on boats.

yarmulka See HEADWEAR: SKULLCAP.

yeoman hat Woman's fabric hat with puffed crown gathered into wide band, sometimes with upturned brim worn with WALKING DRESS from 1806 to 1812.

zucchetto See CLERICAL DRESS: CALOTTE.

head wrap See HEADWEAR.

heart breaker See HAIRSTYLES: CRÈVE-CŒUR and LOVE LOCK.

heart-shaped cut See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

heart-shaped headdress See HEADWEAR.

heather effect † Appearance of fabric achieved by blending dyed fibers with white fibers to produce a mottled appearance. First made in lavender tones similar to the flowers of the heather plant, but now made in many different colors.

heat setting † Process used to set, by applying heat and pressure, permanent pleats or creases in fabrics made of manufactured fibers such as nylon, polyester, and acetate.

Hedebo See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES.

hedghog See HAIRSTYLES: COIFFURE À L'HÉRISSE.

heel 1. See FOOTWEAR. 2. See HOSIERY.

heel horn See FOOTWEAR: A.T.P.

heelless hose See HOSIERY.

heel lift See FOOTWEAR: HEELS.

heels See FOOTWEAR.

Heim, Jacques * See APPENDIX/DESIGNERS.

heliodor See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

heliotrope See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS: BLOODSTONE.

helmet See HEADWEAR.

hem See CLOTHING CONSTRUCTION DETAILS.

hematite See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

hemispherical hat See HEADWEAR.

hemming stitch See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES.

hemp † A coarse, strong, lustrous fiber from the stem of the hemp plant. Cultivation of hemp plants is illegal in the United States because the plant is from the same family as marijuana; however, sale of hemp fabrics and fibers is legal and the fiber is used for making apparel.

hemstitch/hemstitching See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES.

Henley boater See HEADWEAR.

Henley neckline See NECKLINES AND COLLARS.

Henley shirt See SHIRTS.

henna 1. Orange-colored dye, one of the earliest dyes discovered, comes from the plant by the same name. Egyptians used it to dye their fingers to the first joint, simulating our nail polish. Also used on toes in some Eastern countries in early days. Used to dye fabrics in primitive times.

2. Basic hair dye or rinse. 3. An orange color.

hennin See HEADWEAR.

Henrietta jacket See COATS AND JACKETS.

Henry II collar See NECKLINES AND COLLARS.

Henry IV collar See NECKLINES AND COLLARS.

hense lynes/henselyns See DOUBLET.

Hercules braid See BRAIDS.

herigaut See GARDECORPS.

hérisson See HAIRSTYLES.

Herkimer diamond See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

herl See FEATHERS.

herlot See HARLOT.

Herman, Stan * See APPENDIX/DESIGNERS.

Hermés * See APPENDIX/DESIGNERS.

heroin chic Term applied to fashion advertising and magazine photography style of the late 1980s and 1990s in which models appear emaciated, pale, and unkempt, with large circles under their eyes; an appearance likened to that of hard-drug addicts.

Herrera, Carolina * See APPENDIX/DESIGNERS.

herringbone Pattern made of short, slanting parallel lines adjacent to other rows slanting in reverse direction, creating a continuous V-shaped design like the bones of a fish. Used in tweeds, embroidery, and in working of fur skins.

herringbone chain See JEWELRY.

herringbone stitch See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES: CATCH STITCH.

herringbone weave † Chevron pattern produced in a fabric by using the twill weave for several rows in one direction, then reversing the direction. Usually made of yarns of two colors in yarn-dyed woolen fabric with thick yarns producing a large pattern. Also called *broken twill weave*.

Hessian boot See FOOTWEAR.

heuke See HEADWEAR.

heuse See FOOTWEAR.

hickory stripes See PRINTS, STRIPES, AND CHECKS.

hidden rivets jeans Jeans with rivets hidden inside the pockets, manufactured by Levi Strauss between 1937 and about 1960.

high button shoe See FOOTWEAR.

high cut See FOOTWEAR.

high fashion Apparel of advanced design available from innovative designers and/or firms. It is usually more expensive.

high hat See HEADWEAR: TOP HAT.

high head See HAIRSTYLES.

Highland dress Traditional man's costume of Scots Highlander, consisting of KILT; PLAID over one shoulder fastened by brooch; scarlet jacket; wide belt with SPORRAN attached; feather bonnet or GLENGARRY CAP (see under HEADWEAR); plaid-top socks; and buttoned gaiters over shoes. Costume was forbidden by law from 1747 to 1782. Also see PLAIDS AND TARTANS.

Highland suit Boy's suit of 1880s and early 1890s consisting of jacket, kilt, GLENGARRY CAP (see under HEADWEAR), and plaid socks copied from *Highland dress*. Also called a *Scotch suit*.

highlights See HAIRSTYLES.

high-rise pants See PANTS.

high-rise waistline See WAISTLINES.

high tech fabrics/hi-tech fabrics Fabrics made from manufactured fibers with special performance characteristics (e.g., water repellence, strength, stretch, heat resistance). Such fabrics have been used for fashion goods, especially in the area of clothing for active sports. Also called *high performance fibers*.

hikers See FOOTWEAR.

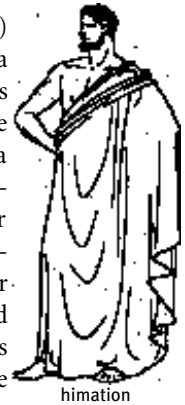
hiking boot See FOOTWEAR.

hiking costume Costume worn by women in 1890s consisting of serge or lighter-weight bloomers, pleated or gathered at the waist and pulled down below the knee. Worn with a tight-fitting Eton-type jacket with large lapels; a white shirt; man's necktie; serviceable shoes with flat heels worn with PUTTEES (see under FOOTWEAR) or high-top laced boots to below the knee; and hat similar to a cowboy hat with high uncreased crown and wide brim. Worn for mountain climbing and hiking.

Hilfiger, Tommy * See APPENDIX/DESIGNERS.

himation (he-matt'-ee-own)

Greek mantle in the form of a rectangular shawl, 3½ to 4 yards long and about 1½ yards wide that was worn alone or over a tunic by men and women in ancient Greece. Made of wool or linen—usually white with border—it was usually draped over the left shoulder and wrapped under the right arm; sometimes one end was pulled over the head.



hinged bracelet See JEWELRY.

hip bags Slang term in 1883 for folds of skirt forming PANNIERS at hips. Also called *curtain drapery* in the United States and *pompadour* in England.

hip boot See FOOTWEAR.

hip buttons See CLOSURES.

hip-hop A style of dancing associated with rap music that began in the Bronx in New York City. **B-boys** (break boys) of 1970s (their female followers were called *flygirls*) developed an athletic dance style. When this music and dance became part of the mainstream in the 1980s, fans imitated styles worn by B-boys and flygirls and wore bright, baggy clothes, football or baseball shirts, baseball caps turned backward, and high running shoes with untied shoe laces, designer sportswear, athletic shoes, and large-scale gold jewelry. In the 1990s, mainstream fashion designers such as TOMMY HILFIGER incorporated hip-hop styles into their lines, and hip-hop influences permeated styles worn by the young. Around 2001, fans of rap music began to wear clip-on covers for their teeth, called **fronts**, made of gold and set with diamonds or other gems. When a person wearing these devices smiled, it was said that his or her smile had **bling**.

hip-hugger Contemporary term for low-slung pants, skirt, or belt worn below normal waistline, resting on hip bones.

hip length See LENGTHS.

Hiplets® See HOSIERY.

hippie/hippie look Term coined in mid-1960s for young person who defied established customs and adopted an unconventional mode of dress

(e.g., long uncombed hair, aged blue jeans, miscellaneous tops, fringed jackets, strings of beads, symbolic pendants, pouch bags, bare feet, or sandals). Started a trend toward ethnic fashions and unusual mixtures of dress.

hip-rider swimsuit See ACTIVEWEAR.

hipsters 1. See PANTS: HIP-HUGGERS. 2. Fans of Bebop music, played by Dizzy Gillespie in the 1940s, who wore berets, colorful, wide scarves, sunglasses, and goatees (see BEARDS).

hi-rise girdle See UNDERGARMENTS.

his and hers look Garments that look alike but that are specifically made one for a man, the other for a woman—as distinct from “unisex-look,” where garments were actually interchangeable. Popular for pajamas during the 1950s. During the late 1960s, popular for all types of clothing, particularly pantsuits with matching vest, caped coats, shirts, and sweaters. Also see UNISEX LOOK.

hive bonnet See HEADWEAR: BEEHIVE HAT #1.

H-line Straight silhouette, or dress, marked by a low horizontal belt or seam and called H by Paris designer Christian Dior in 1957.

hobble skirt See SKIRTS.

hockey skate See FOOTWEAR.

hogger/hoker See FOOTWEAR: OKER.

holbein stitch (hole-bine) See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES: DOUBLE-RUNNING STITCH.

Holbein work (hole-bine) See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES.

Hollywood top slip See UNDERGARMENTS.

holoku (hoh-low'-koo) Traditional Hawaiian garment derived from the EMPIRE DRESS styles worn by American missionary women when they arrived in Hawaii in the early 1880s. Hawaiian royalty asked the missionaries to make them dresses, and the resulting gowns were altered slightly to accommodate the larger size of the Hawaiians and the climate. The full-length garment had a YOKE from which the dress fell in a



loose fit, a high neck, and long sleeves. Over the years these garments have changed somewhat as fashions changed, but retain these basic lines in either more or less fitted versions and are still worn for formal occasions by women of Hawaiian descent.

holster pockets See POCKETS.

holy work/hollie work See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES.

homburg See HEADWEAR.

home fashions Textile products used for home end uses such as towels, bedding, draperies, and table linens, and which exhibit style changes over time in response to changing fashion trends.

home party See PARTY PLAN.

homespun † Fabrics made from handspun yarns and woven on a hand loom. Most are plain weave, loosely constructed, heavy wool fabrics made of coarse, uneven yarns. Contemporary versions are now made with automatic looms from manufactured and wool blends and imitate the texture and appearance of the handmade fabrics.

honeycomb † Any fabric that forms a series of recessed squares similar to a waffle and is made either in a honeycomb weave or knit. Cotton fabrics are frequently called *waffle-doth*. They are sometimes erroneously called *waffle piqués*.

honeycomb stitch See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES.

Honiton gossamer skirt See UNDERGARMENTS.

Honiton lace See LACES.

hood See HEADWEAR.

hooded heel See FOOTWEAR.

hooded seal See FURS: HAIR SEAL.

hook and eye See CLOSURES.

hook-and-loop closure See CLOSURES: VELCRO.®

hoop bracelet See JEWELRY: BANGLE BRACELETS.

hoop earrings See JEWELRY: GYPSY EARRINGS.

hoop petticoat See UNDERGARMENTS: HOOPS.

hoops See UNDERGARMENTS.

hoop skirt See SKIRTS.

Hoover apron See APRONS.

Hope Star® See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.

Hopi bracelet See JEWELRY.

hopsacking † A broad classification of fabrics made in loosely constructed plain weave of coarse uneven yarns. The fabric was originally found in sacks made from coarse undyed jute

or hemp into which hops were put during harvesting. Made in cotton, spun rayon, and manufactured fibers. Coarse varieties also called BURLAP.

hoqueton/houqueton See ARMOR: ACTON.

horizontal integration The production by a business of products competitive with other products it makes. For example, a knitted fabric producer that makes various types of knitted fabrics. Also see VERTICAL INTEGRATION.

Horn, Carol * See APPENDIX/DESIGNERS.

horned headdress See HEADWEAR.

horn rims See EYEWEAR.

horsehair 1. † Hair fiber obtained from the mane or tail of a horse. 2. Fabric made from this fiber used in combination with mohair, linen, cotton, and other fibers woven in an openwork weave. Used for interfacing in suits, coats, and also for stiffening.

horsehair braid See BRAIDS.

horsehide See LEATHERS.

horseshoe Term for U-shape, used as neckline or yoke on blouses, sweaters, and dresses.

horseshoe collar/horseshoe neckline See NECKLINES AND COLLARS.

horseshoe jumper See JUMPERS.

hose See HOSIERY.

HOSIERY

Knitted item of wearing apparel covering the foot and/or leg. Includes apparel also called STOCKINGS and SOCKS (see under HOSIERY). For forerunners of knitted hosiery, see CHAUSSES and CHAUSSEMBLES in the alphabetical listing. A machine for knitting stockings was invented in the late 1500s, and the inventor presented Queen Elizabeth I with a pair of knitted silk stockings. Hosiery was made from cotton, linen, wool, and silk yarns. Among the innovations in the development of hosiery were “flesh-colored,” or beige, silk hosiery in the 1920s, the introduction of NYLON hose in 1940, textured hose in the 1960s, and PANTYHOSE (see under HOSIERY) in the 1960s. Synonym: HOSE (see under HOSIERY). *Der.* Anglo-Saxon *hosa*.

all-in-one pantyhose See HOSIERY: PANTYHOSE.

all-sheer pantyhose Sheer nylon pantyhose made with no reinforcements. Also called *sheer pantyhose*.

ankle-length hosiery Sock-length hosiery made out of conventional nylon yarn. Worn by women with full-length slacks or pants.

ankle sock Short sock reaching only to the ankle; may be worn turned down or have elastic top on the cuff. Introduced for women in 1920. This caused a sensation when they were first worn at Forest Hills, New York, for an amateur tennis match in 1931 by Mrs. Fearnley-Whittingstall. Worn today by women and children and infrequently by men. Also called *anklet*. Also see HOSIERY: BOBBY SOCK.



anklet See HOSIERY: ANKLE SOCK.

anti-embolism stocking A stocking specially constructed with graduated compression that aids blood flow and prevents blood clots from forming. Also called *surgical stockings*.

argyle socks Sock knitted in a diamond pattern of several colors by hand or on a jacquard loom. Heel, toe, and top areas are of solid color while the other part is of a multicolored, diamond-patterned plaid. *Der.* Tartan of Duke of Argyle and Clan Campbell of Argyll, a county in West Scotland. Also spelled *argyll*, *argyl*.

Art Deco hose Hose printed with geometric designs derived from Art Deco styles, which underwent a revival in the late 1960s. *Der.* French, *art decoratif*, “decorative art.”

Art Nouveau hose Stylized single or multiple printed designs placed on the calf or climbing the leg, usually on opaque or colored hose, based on Art Nouveau designs. An innovation of the late 1960s. *Der.* French, “new art.”

astrolegs hose Hose imprinted with signs of the zodiac, introduced in the late 1960s.

athletic sock See HOSIERY: SWEATSOCK.

bed sock Knit sock worn when sleeping to keep foot warm. Often hand-knit in a variety of fancy stitches. Also called *foot warmer*.

bikini pantyhose Pantyhose with low-slung top for wear with bare-midriff dresses, hip-hugger skirts, or low-slung pants.

blazer sock Boys' and girls' socks decorated with bands of color. Similar in effect to competitive stripes on knit shirts.

bobby sock Ankle sock, usually with turned-down cuff, worn by children and so universally popular with female teenagers during 1940s and 1950s that young girls were called "bobby soxers."

bodyshaper pantyhose See HOSIERY: PANTYHOSE.

boot That part of pantyhose or stocking that extends from the panty or welt to the toe.

boot hose Long stockings of coarse linen with flared tops. The tops sometimes had decorated borders made of gold or silver lace, ruffled linen, or fringed silk, which were called **boot hose tops**. When made with no foot, fitted with a strap under arch of foot and laced through eyelets at top to connect with breeches, they were called **stirrup hose**. Worn by men from mid-15th to 18th c. to protect silk stockings under heavy boots. Also called *boot stocking*.

boot hose tops See HOSIERY: BOOT HOSE.

bootie See FOOTWEAR: BOOTIE #2.

checkerboard hose Hose knitted in a checked design with some squares sheer and some opaque, or knitted in two colors.

clocked hose Hose or stockings that have designs running part way up the sides of the legs. First worn in the 16th c. and intermittently since. Designs may be knitted in or embroidered on after hose are knitted.



control pantyhose See HOSIERY: PANTYHOSE.

Courrèges flower sock See HOSIERY: KNEE-HI SOCK.

crew sock Heavy sock extending to lower calf with foot knitted in plain stitch, upper part with rib stitch. Originally white and worn for rowing and other sports. Now made in colors, especially for men and boys.

cushion-sole sock Sock worn for active sports knit with a special sole that keeps the foot from blistering—often a layer of cotton and stretch-nylon terry doth. Frequently given a special finish to help protect the foot from fungus, bacteria, and odor.

detachable pantyhose Three-piece pantyhose made with patented bands on panties to attach replacement stockings.

dress sock Man's sock in lightweight, silky type, nonbulky yarns in conservative colors.

electric sock Heavyweight knee-high sock, usually made of a combination of fibers, with a specially designed heating element operated by a battery held on by strap around the leg. Worn by spectators at winter sports events. Trademarked by Timely Products Corp. and called *Lectra-Sox*.®

English rib sock Man's sock knit with a wide rib or wale and a narrow depression between the wales (see WALE #2).

fancies Men's socks in multicolor designs.

finger band In all nude pantyhose, a reinforcement just under the waistband to protect against fingernail punctures.

fishmouth toe Method of closing a nonreciprocating toe (see HOSIERY: RECIPROCATING CONSTRUCTION) in which the seam runs parallel to the bottom of the foot rather than across the top of the toe.

fishnet hose Openwork hose in a diamond-shaped pattern.

flat-knit hose See HOSIERY: FULL-FASHIONED HOSE.

footsock/footie Sock that ends below the ankle bone. When these socks have a pompon sewn on at the back, they may be called **poms**.

foot warmers See HOSIERY: BED SOCK.

full-fashioned hose Hose knit in flat pieces and seamed up the back, leaving fashion marks where knitting is increased or decreased. Also called *flat-knit hose*.

garter belt hose Hose attached to two elastic strips that connect at waistline to an elastic band around waist.

glitter hose Hose made of shiny yarn—some made with metallic yarn that reflects silver, gold, and copper tones. Introduced to wear with minidresses in the 1960s. Also called *glimmer, silver, gold or metallic hose*.

gold hose See HOSIERY: GLITTER HOSE.

gym sock See HOSIERY: SWEATSOCK.

half-hose Standard-length stocking for men that ends halfway between the ankle and the knee.

heel Portion of the hose that fits the heel of the foot.

heelless hose Hosiery without a double reinforcement at the heel.

hose Synonym for STOCKINGS (see HOSIERY) and HOSIERY (see introduction to HOSIERY). Current usage suggests that hose tends to be used when referring to the more transparent and decorative varieties of hosiery, while “stockings” is used for heavier varieties of a more utilitarian nature.

jacquard hose (ja-kard') Hosiery knit on a jacquard knitting machine that permits much variation in colors and patterns. Argyle and herringbone designs would be examples of jacquard patterns. Popular in the 1920s for children, and fashionable since.

jeweled pantyhose Sheer pantyhose with embroidery at ankle trimmed with rhinestones. Introduced in 1986.

knee-high hose Hose of conventional nylon yarn or of nylon and SPANDEX that come to just below the knees and are finished at the top with elastic. First made in beige and worn when dresses were long, now worn with various types of pants and after the 1980s featured in black, white, and colors. Sometimes abbreviated to *knee-hi*.

knee-hi sock Sock that reaches to below the knee. Worn by boys in early 1900s with knickers and accepted for girls in 1920s and 1930s and after. Adopted by teenagers and adult women in the 1960s as the popularity of the MINI increased. Featured by the French couturier Courrèges in his collection in 1965. In 1967 he introduced a variation called the **Courrèges flower sock** (coor-rej'), a dainty feminine sock coming to several inches below the knee usually styled in white with lacy top, embroidered with flowers. Also called *knee sock*, *trouser sock*.



knee sock See HOSIERY: KNEE-HI SOCK.

lace hose Knitted lace in rose, Chantilly, and Spanish lace patterns used to make hosiery. Introduced in 1960s and popular for children and women in 1980s.

lace pantyhose Pantyhose made of patterned stretch lace in openwork styles.

legwarmer Knitted covering for legs extending from the ankle to the knee or above. Originally worn by ballet and toe dancers when exercising and in the 1980s became a fashion item.



lisle hosiery (lye) Socks and hose made of cotton LISLE YARN, smooth, lustrous cotton yarn. Nearly as fine as silk, usually white, brown, or black, lisle hosiery was worn by men, women, and children throughout 19th and early 20th c. until replaced by silk in 1920s and nylon in 1940s. Revived in the 1960s when longer opaque socks were popular. See HOSIERY: OPAQUE HOSE. *Der.* Early spelling of Lille, France.

mesh hose Nylon hose knit with a milanese stitch, forming tiny diamond designs that make hose run-resistant. See MILANESE KNIT.

metallic hose See HOSIERY: GLITTER HOSE.

mini-pane hose See HOSIERY: WINDOWPANE HOSE.

mock seam Hosiery industry term for seam sewed into circular-knit hose to give appearance of FULL-FASHIONED HOSE (see under HOSIERY).

neats Solid color socks ornamented with small, evenly spaced designs such as dots.

neon sock Ankle- or knee-length sock styled with ribbed tops in extremely bright colors of 100% nylon.

nonreciprocated See HOSIERY: RECIPROCATED CONSTRUCTION.

novelties Women's hosiery that has unusual patterns, designs, or coloring.

nylons Now synonymous with women's hose because of the almost universal use of NYLON in dress hose for women. Trademarked nylon yarn was introduced in 1939, making possible a much sheerer type of hose that was also more durable than the silk hosiery worn previously. In great demand during World War II, nylon hosiery became a “black market” item.

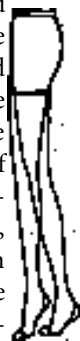
nude heel Women's pantyhose or nylon stockings that have no reinforcement at the heel. Popular for wear with backless or sling-back shoes.

opaque hose/opaque pantyhose (oh-pake') Textured or plain hose or pantyhose that are

not sheer and come in all colors. Op a que nylon pantyhose are 40 DENIER or more in weight.

over-the-knee socks Sock or stocking with an elastic top that reaches above the knee. Elastic top holds up the stocking without a garter.

pantyhose Hosiery, made with textured and sheer nylon yarns, that follows the design of tights, having stockings and panties cut in one piece. In 1958 the firm called Soci t  de Bonneterie De Tergnier in France patented a brand of sheer pantyhose called *mitoufle* (mitt-oof'-luh) (or tights). Mary Quant, British designer, also was influential in trying to find a suitable hose and girdle combination for wear with her short-skirted dresses of early 1960s. Pantyhose were introduced in the United



pantyhose

States about 1963. First made in sizes for tall, medium, and petite heights, and later made in larger sizes, pantyhose were introduced for men in fall 1970. In the mid-1980s interest in unusual pantyhose was revived and currently they are made in many patterns, colors, and textures. Those pantyhose with a knitted-in panty of heavier weight nylon or cotton are known as **all-in-one pantyhose**. **Control pantyhose** are those in which the panty portion is knit of nylon and stretch yarns (see ELASTOMERS) to provide the control of a lightweight girdle. **Bodyshaper pantyhose** are control pantyhose with the control section extending to cover the thighs in addition to abdomen and hips. Also see HOSIERY: TIGHTS.

patterned hose Hosiery woven in a design, usually on a Jacquard knitting machine, e.g., point d'esprit, checkerboard, and argyle hose.

Pe ds® Registered trademark of Americal Corporation for a broad range of hosiery products of varying types and uses. Also see HOSIERY: SOCKLET.

poms See HOSIERY: FOOTSOCK.

point d'esprit hose (pwan des-pree') Netlike machine-manufactured hose of cotton or nylon with some of the holes made solid to form a decorative pattern.

proportioned hose Hosiery designed to fit different types of legs (e.g., extra long, full above-the-knee, long, short, and average).

quarter socks Sock, shorter than ankle length, made of acrylic and nylon with colored terry knit top in colors.

reciprocated construction In the making of a stocking, which begins at the top and moves toward the toe, a semicircular or "reciprocating" motion of the machine shapes a pocket for the heel. A toe may also be formed. A **nonreciprocated** stocking has no shaped heel or toe. (See HOSIERY: TUBE SOCK and FISHMOUTH TOE.)

replaceable legs Waist-length garment in which one or both legs can be replaced. Made either as a separate panty to which legs attach at the bottom or as two separate legs, each with a half panty and a full waistband.

ribbed hose Textured hose knit with vertical wales.

rollups Man's stockings pulled up over knee of breeches and folded over in wide band. Worn in late 17th to mid 18th c. Also called *rollers*, *rolling stockings*, or *hose*.

run See RUN in alphabetical listing.

run-resistant hosiery See RUN-RESISTANT in alphabetical listing.

sandalfoot hose Hosiery with no reinforcement at the toe. Popular for wearing with open-toed shoes or sandals.

sandalfoot pantyhose Sheer pantyhose with no reinforcements at toes or heels. May have an opaque panty portion, or be sheer to the waist.

sanitary sock An athletic sock, usually white, worn under a STIRRUP SOCK (see under FOOTWEAR) as part of an athletic uniform.

seamed hose 1. Full-fashioned hose with a seam up the back, originally made by the flat-knit process and sewed together. Popular type hose generally worn until the 1960s, when textured yarns were invented with more "stretch" making it possible to make well-fitting hose without the seam. By 1968, very few seamed hose were sold. 2. Reintroduced in 1970s but made in circular knits usually with black lines up the back.

seamed pantyhose Conventional pantyhose with black seam up the back.

seamless hose Circular-knit hose without seam in back. See CIRCULAR KNIT in alphabetical listing.

sheer hose Nylon hose made with a fine or low denier yarn, thus making them more translucent. **Ultra sheer** hose are made with exceptionally fine yarns; **day sheer** or **business sheer** hose are less sheer and more durable.

sheer pantyhose See HOSIERY: ALL-SHEER PANTYHOSE.

silver hose See HOSIERY: GLITTER HOSE.

slipper sock Crocheted or knit sock attached to soft, moccasin-type sole.

slouch sock Anklet with Shirred tricolored top, made of acrylic and stretch nylon, designed to be pushed down and gathered around the ankle.

sneaker sock Type of **socklet** (see under HOSIERY) that is shaped higher in front to conform to laced instep of the sneakers. Worn instead of sock for the bare-legged look.

socklet Very low-cut sock usually lightweight and not visible above pumps or other shoes, styled to keep feet comfortable while maintaining bare-leg look in summer. **Peds®** (see under FOOTWEAR) is a trademark for the first widely available socklet made in a number of fibers and styles.

socks Now generally applied to knitted coverings for the foot and part of the leg that end somewhere around the ankle or above. Also see under HOSIERY: STOCKINGS. The term derives from the Latin *soccus*, which was a soft Roman shoe that covered the foot and ankle.

stay-up hose Regular hose knitted with a special top that holds the hose up without garters. Also called *stretch top*.

stirrup hose 1. Hosiery in which the foot portion is fashioned without a heel or toe but which has a strap that fits under the instep of the foot. Often this construction is part of an athletic uniform. 2. See HOSIERY: BOOT HOSE.

stockings Generally applied to knitted coverings for the foot and most of the leg. The dis-

inction between socks and stockings is not entirely clear-cut, although socks are generally thought of as shorter and stockings as longer. The term derives from a type of leg covering called **stocks** that was worn in the 15th and 16th cs. and covered the foot and leg, extending to the waist. The upper section was called the upper stocks and the lower section, the lower stocks.



stocking

When the garment was eventually divided into two separate parts in the 16th c., the lower part, which extended to the knee or above, became known as a stocking.

stretch hose Hosiery made with textured nylon stretch yarns. When such hose are not on the leg, they look very small.

stretch socks Socks knitted with textured yarns. Made so flexible that one size usually fits any size foot. Also made for men, women, and children.

support legwear Hosiery for men or women knitted of stretch nylon combined with spandex yarns to provide support to the muscles and veins of the legs. These fabrics keep pressure on the blood vessels so they will not dilate. This improves the circulation and prevents leg fatigue. They are made as hose and pantyhose for women and socks or stockings for men.

surgical stocking See HOSIERY: ANTI-EMBOLISM STOCKING.

sweatsock Sock made of combination of fibers (e.g., wool, acrylic, cotton, sometimes with cushioned sole). When this type of sock was first worn, it was always white and made of coarse cotton yarns that stretched out of shape easily. The cotton versions were known as **gym socks**, which were worn instead of wool socks for active sports and gym classes because of their washability. Blends now make these socks more washable and shape retentive. Usually they have a ribbed top and plain foot. Also called *athletic sock*.

tattoo pantyhose Very sheer pantyhose with legs painted in twining floral designs that appear at a distance to be tattooed on the leg.



socklet



sock

textured hose Any style of hose patterned with thick and thin sections (e.g., lace, striped, or windowpane hose). First introduced by Rudi Gernreich in 1964 and later shown by other couturiers such as Givenchy in 1969.

thermal sock Heavy boot-length sock worn for winter activities; made of fibers with good insulating qualities.

thigh highs Nylon or nylon and spandex stockings that end at the top of the thigh and usually have elastic lace tops.

tights Knitted pants and stockings made in one piece, usually of opaque textured yarns. Worn originally by athletes and dancers, later worn by children. In the early 1960s worn primarily by women and girls as a substitute for hose. In 1980s also worn with leotards for dancing, exercising, etc.



tights

toilet Hosiery designed to cover only the toe portion of the foot. Worn with heelless shoes such as mules or clogs.

trouser sock See HOSIERY: KNEE-HI SOCK.

tube sock Calf or knee-length sock made of stretch yarn that does not have a knitted-in heel or toe.

ultra-sheer pantyhose See HOSIERY: SHEER PANTYHOSE.

U seams Pantyhose in which one leg is sewn to the other with a continuous U-shaped seam. As a result, they have no crotch.

welt That part at the top of a stocking that is reinforced so that it is strong enough to fasten a support device. It may be a separate piece of fabric machine sewn to the top of the stocking or may be knitted in heavier yarn and folded double.

windowpane hose Textured hose made in geometric squares in thin and thick sections. Heavier part looks like the frame of the window, sheerer section looks like the glass. **Mini-pane** hose have smaller squares. Made in white, black, and all colors (e.g., shocking pink, chartreuse, and orange). Popular in the mid-1960s.

hostess Adjective used to describe informal apparel worn at home while entertaining. Also called

at-home wear. See SLEEPWEAR AND LOUNGEWEAR: HOSTESS CULOTTES and HOSTESS ROBE.

hot mask See MASKS.

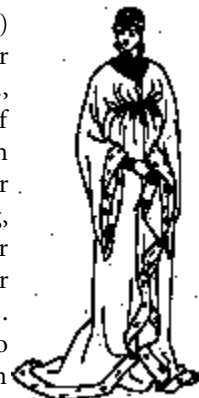
hot pants/HotPants See SHORTS.

hounds' ears See CUFFS.

hound's-tooth/houndstooth check See PRINTS, CHECKS, AND STRIPES.

houppelande (hoop'-land)

1. Man's voluminous outer robe of late 15th and 16th c., introduced by Richard II of England, made with high funnel-shaped neckline—later V-shaped. Sleeves were long, full, and DAGGED at edge or of BAGPIPE-type (see under SHOULDERS AND SLEEVES). Varied from thigh-length to trailing on the ground when worn as ceremonial robe.



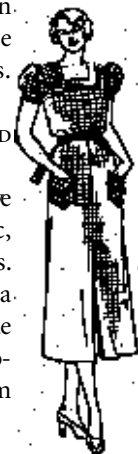
houppelande #2

2. Woman's dress worn from late 14th through the 15th c. with fitted bodice, V-neckline with REVERS (see NECKLINES AND COLLARS) and dickey, or scooped neckline. Sleeves were long and tight-fitting or voluminous with fur lining. Frequently trained in back and so long in front that skirt had to be lifted when walking. 3. A short houppelande with embroidery on both sleeves was known as a **haincēdin** (ayn-cell-ihh) and named after Haincelin Coq, jester of Charles VI of France.

hourglass silhouette The shape of a woman's dress that has a full bust, pinched-in waist, and full, curving hips, a shape not unlike that of an hourglass. Illustrated at SILHOUETTE.

housecoat See SLEEPWEAR AND LOUNGEWEAR.

housedress A simple inexpensive dress made of washable fabric, worn while doing household chores. In the early 20th c., it was called a *wrapper*. One of the first items made by the garment industry in mass production, the wrapper evolved from a woman's dressing gown.

housedress
c. 1930s

houzel See FOOTWEAR: HEUSE.

house slipper See FOOTWEAR.

- housse** See GARNACHE.
- howling bags** See PANTS.
- huarache** (wa-rach-ee) See FOOTWEAR.
- Hubbard blouse** See BLOUSES AND TOPS.
- huckaback embroidery** See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES.
- huckaback stitch** See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES.
- Hudson Bay sable** See FURS: MARTEN.
- Hudson seal** See FURS: MUSKRAT.
- hug-me-tight** See VESTS.
- huke** See HUQUE.
- hula skirt** See SKIRTS.
- human hair wig** See WIGS AND HAIRPIECES.
- hundred pleater** See HEADWEAR: CHEF'S HAT.
- Hungarian Embroidery** See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES.
- Hungarian point** See EMBROIDERIES AND SEWING STITCHES: FLORENTINE EMBROIDERY.
- Hungarian suit** A boy's belted double-breasted tunic, worn from late 1860s with a small turned-down collar and fastened on the side in a double-breasted manner. Trimmed with braid down the side front, on the flapped pockets, and cuffs. Worn with matching full or fitted trousers to below the knees with JOCKEY BOOTS (see under FOOTWEAR).
- hunt** Adjective used to describe clothing and accessories used by equestrians when hunting on horseback. See ACTIVEWEAR: HUNT BREECHES, COATS AND JACKETS: PINK COAT, HEADWEAR: HUNT CAP and HUNT DERBY.
- hunter's pink** See COATS AND JACKETS: PINK COAT.
- hunter's watch** See WATCHES.
- hunting calf** British term for REVERSE CALF. See LEATHERS.
- hunting cap** See HEADWEAR.
- hunting necktie** See TIES.
- hunting plaid** See PLAIDS AND TARTANS.
- hunting shirt** See SHIRTS.
- hunting stock** See TIES.
- hunting vest** See VESTS.
- hunt look** **1.** Overall appearance, popular around 1984, that consisted of the wearing, for daytime or evening, of either full attire or individual items of apparel worn when riding or for a formal fox hunt (e.g., jodhpurs or stirrup pants in tweeds or flannels with a stock shirt or any other type blouse; Derby worn with stock tie, weskit [sometimes with sleeves], pleated trousers, and a full-length coat similar to a Chesterfield; a narrow midi-length skirt with side slit worn with boots and hacking or velvet jacket). **2.** Riding habit as worn for a formal fox hunt or hacking in Great Britain, Massachusetts, or Virginia.
- huke/huke** Man's flowing outer garment, worn throughout 15th c., generally calf-length—sometimes longer or shorter—slashed up sides, and fur-trimmed around edges. Sometimes slashed up front and back for ease in riding horseback.
- hurluberlu** See HAIRSTYLES.
- huseau** See FOOTWEAR: HEUSE.
- Hush Puppies®** See footwear.
- husky sizes** Boys' sizes—8 to 20—cut with more generous proportions.
- hussar boots** See FOOTWEAR.
- hussar jacket** See COATS AND JACKETS.
- hyacinth** See GEMS, GEM CUTS, AND SETTINGS.